

Министерство образования и науки Российской Федерации
АМУРСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ

Ю.А. Кравцова, О.Б. Карачева, И.Н. Федорищева,
Л.В. Фещенко, Т.В. Шуйская

S T O R Y T A L K S

**Книга для преподавателя
к учебному пособию
по домашнему чтению**

Благовещенск
2010

ББК 81.2 Англ – 923

Г 93

Печатается по решению

редакционно-издательского совета

*факультет международных
отношений*

*Амурского государственного
университета*

Ю.А. Кравцова, О.Б. Карачева, И.Н. Федорищева, Л.В. Фещенко, Т.В. Шуйская

Story Talks. Книга для преподавателя к учебному пособию по домашнему чтению/Благовещенск: Амурский гос. ун-т, 2010. – 269 с.

Пособие предназначено для преподавателей, программа работы которых предполагает преподавание английского в качестве второго иностранного языка, а также для занятий с углубленным изучением языка.

Unit 1 – Т.В.Шуйская, Unit 2 - О.Б.Карачева, Unit 3 - Ю.А. Кравцова, Unit 4 – Ю.А. Кравцова, Unit 5 – Ю.А. Кравцова, Unit 6 – И.Н.Федорищева, Unit 7 – И.Н.Федорищева, Редакция – Л.В. Фещенко

Рецензенты: А.В. Трухачева, к.ф.н., доцент кафедры АФимПАЯ БГПУ;
С.В. Деркач, к.ф.н., доцент кафедры иностранных языков №1 АмГУ.

INTRODUCTION

Story Talks is a reading textbook for students of English as a foreign language. Proficient reading requires the coordination of a number of skills and depends on the reader's ability to select the proper strategies to solve each reading problem. This book is designed to provide students with information processing tasks in the context of a wide range of readings. Stories representing a variety of topics and styles can be read both for enjoyment and analysis. The exercises in **Story Talks** provide practice in using both text-based knowledge and writing skills. They enable teachers to introduce readings in terms of vocabulary, grammar and ideas.

A typical unit presents a story with related commentaries and exercises which are grouped into three sections. The commentaries are referred to as "Focus on Vocabulary", "Focus on Phrasal Verbs" and "Focus on Idioms" which are followed by respective practice exercises aimed at improving the student's command of vocabulary, idioms and phrasal verbs. The meanings of new words in the sections are provided through definitions, explanations, synonyms and examples that enable students to see how the words function in other situations or contexts and deepen their knowledge of the vocabulary. Students strengthen their understanding of a word and/or phrase by applying it/them three times in three different types of exercises. Revision exercises that follow allow for more reinforcement.

Grammar exercises provide intensive work on various grammatical structures. They can serve both as a means for practicing structures and as a basis for developing students' compositional skills.

The exercises in the final section with the focus on critical reading give students practice in understanding how the arrangement of the ideas affects the overall meaning of the story. Students are required not only to find the main idea of the story, but also answer questions about specific details in the passage and to draw conclusions based on its understanding. All pre-reading and post-reading exercises and questions contained in every unit suggest a number of opportunities for follow up discussions and can serve as a springboard for the students' writing.

The authors hope you will enjoy working with **Story Talks** and using the exercises and activities in it. They have confidence that this textbook will be interesting, innovative and useful for both teachers and students.

UNIT 1

MR. KNOW-ALL

W. S. Maugham

PART 1

I was prepared to dislike Max Kelada even before I knew him. The war had just finished and the passenger traffic in the ocean-going liners was heavy. Accommodation was very hard to get and you had to put up with whatever the agents chose to offer you. You could not hope for a cabin to yourself and I was thankful to be given one in which there were only two berths. But when I was told the name of my companion my heart sank. It suggested closed portholes and the night air rigidly excluded. It was bad enough to share a cabin for fourteen days with anyone (I was going from San Francisco to Yokohama), but I should have looked upon it with less dismay if my fellow passenger's name had been Smith or Brown.

When I went on board I found Mr. Kelada's luggage already below. I did not like the look of it; there were too many labels on the suit-cases, and the wardrobe trunk was too big. He had unpacked his toilet things, and I observed that he was a patron of the excellent Monsieur Coty; for I saw on the washing-stand his scent, his hair-wash and his brilliantine. Mr. Kelada's brushes, ebony with his monogram in gold, would have been all the better for a scrub. I did not at all like Mr. Kelada. I made my way into the smoking-room. I called for a pack of cards and began to play patience. I had scarcely started before a man came up to me and asked me if he was right in thinking my name was so and so.

"I am Mr. Kelada," he added, with a smile that showed a row of flashing teeth, and sat down.

"Oh, yes, we're sharing a cabin, I think."

"Bit of luck, I call it. You never know who you're going to be put in with. I was jolly glad when I heard you're English. I'm all for us English sticking together when we're abroad, if you understand what I mean."

I blinked.

"Are you English?" I asked, perhaps tactlessly.

"Rather. You don't think I look like an American, do you? British to the backbone, that's what I am."

To prove it, Mr. Kelada took out of his pocket a passport and airily waved it under my nose.

King George has many strange subjects. Mr. Kelada was short and of a sturdy build, clean-shaven and dark-skinned, with a fleshy hooked nose and very large, lustrous and liquid eyes. His long black hair was sleek and curly. He spoke with a fluency in which there was nothing English and his gestures were exuberant. I felt pretty sure that a closer inspection of that British passport would have betrayed the fact that Mr. Kelada was born under a bluer sky than is generally seen in England.

"What will you have?" he asked me.

I looked at him doubtfully. Prohibition was in force and to all appearance the ship was bone-dry. When I am not thirsty I do not know which I dislike more, ginger ale or lemon squash. But Mr. Kelada flashed an oriental smile at me.

"Whisky and soda or a dry martini, you have only to say the word."

From each of his hip pockets he fished a flask and laid it on the table before me. I chose the martini, and calling the steward he ordered a tumbler of ice and a couple of glasses.

"A very good cocktail," I said.

"Well, there are plenty more where that came from, and if you've got any friends on board, you tell them you've got a pal who's got all the liquor in the world."

Mr. Kelada was chatty. He talked of New York and of San Francisco. He discussed plays, pictures, and politics. He was patriotic. The Union Jack is an impressive piece of drapery, but when it is flourished by a gentleman from Alexandria or Beirut, I cannot but feel that it loses somewhat in dignity. Mr. Kelada was familiar. I do not wish to put on airs, but I can not help feeling that it is seemly in a total stranger to put "mister" before my name when he addresses me. Mr. Kelada, doubtless to set me at my ease, used no such formality. I did not like Mr. Kelada.

I had put aside the cards when he sat down, but now, thinking that for this first occasion our conversation had lasted long enough, I went on with my game.

"The three on the four," said Mr. Kelada.

There is nothing more exasperating when you are playing patience than to be told where to put the card you have turned up before you have had a chance to look for yourself.

"It's coming out, it's coming out," he cried. "The ten on the knave."

With rage and hatred in my heart I finished.

Then he seized the pack.

"Do you like card tricks?"

"No, I hate card tricks," I answered.

"Well, I'll just show you this one."

He showed me three. Then I said I would go down to the dining-room and get my seat at table.

"Oh, that's all right," he said. "I've already taken a seat for you. I thought that as we were in the same state-room we might just as well sit at the same table."

I did not like Mr. Kelada.

I not only shared a cabin with him and ate three meals. A day at the same table, but I could not walk round the deck without his joining me. It was impossible to snub him. It never occurred to him that he was not wanted. He was certain that you were as glad to see him as he was to see you. In your own house you might have kicked him downstairs and slammed the door in his face without the suspicion dawning on him that he was not a welcome visitor. He was a good mixer, and in three days knew everyone on board. He ran everything. He managed the sweeps, conducted the auctions, collected money for prizes at the sports, got up quoit and golf matches, organized the concert and arranged the fancy-dress ball. He was everywhere and always. He was certainly the best hated man in the ship. We called him Mr. Know-All, even to his face. He took it as a compliment. But it was at mealtimes that he was not intolerable. For the better part of an hour then he had us at his mercy. He was hearty, jovial, loquacious and argumentative. He knew everything better than

anybody else, and it was an affront to his overweening vanity that you should disagree with him. He would not drop a subject, however unimportant, till he had brought you round to his way of thinking. The possibility that he could be mistaken never occurred to him. He was the chap who knew. We sat at the doctor's table. Mr. Kelada would certainly have had it all his own way, for the doctor was lazy and I was frigidly indifferent, except for a man called Ramsay who sat there also. He was as dogmatic as Mr. Kelada and resented bitterly the Levantine's cocksureness. The discussions they had were acrimonious and interminable.

Ramsay was in the American Consular Service and was stationed at Kobe. He was a great heavy fellow from the Middle West, with loose fat under a tight skin, and he bulged out of his ready-made clothes. He was on his way back to resume his post, having been on a flying visit to New York to fetch his wife who had been spending a year at home. Mrs. Ramsay was a very pretty little thing, with pleasant manners and a sense of humor. The Consular Service is ill-paid, and she was dressed always very simply; but she knew how to wear her clothes. She achieved an effect of quiet distinction. I should not have paid any particular attention to her but that she possessed a quality that may be common enough in women, but nowadays is not obvious in their demeanour. You could not look at her without being struck by her modesty. It shone in her like a flower on a coat.

PART 2

One evening at dinner the conversation by chance drifted to the subject of pearls. There had been in the papers a good deal of talk about the culture pearls which the cunning Japanese were making, and the doctor remarked that they must inevitably diminish the value of real ones. They were very good already; they would soon be perfect. Mr. Kelada, as was his habit, rushed the new topic. He told us all that was to be known about pearls. I do not believe Ramsay knew anything about them at all, but he could not resist the opportunity to have a fling at the Levantine, and in five minutes we were in the middle of a heated argument. I had seen Mr. Kelada

vehement and voluble before, but never so voluble and vehement as now. At last something that Ramsay said stung him, for he thumped the table and shouted:

"Well, I ought to know what I am talking about. I'm going to Japan just to look into this Japanese pearl business. I am in the trade and there is not a man in it who won't tell you that what I say about pearls goes. I know all the best pearls in the world, and what I don't know about pearls isn't worth knowing."

Here was news for us, for Mr. Kelada, with all his loquacity, had never told anyone what his business was. We only knew vaguely that he was going to Japan on some commercial errand. He looked round the table triumphantly.

"They'll never be able to get a culture pearl that an expert like me can't tell with half an eye." He pointed to a chain that Mrs. Ramsay wore. "You take my word for it, Mrs. Ramsay, that chain you're wearing will never be worth a cent less than it is now."

Mrs. Ramsay in her modest way flushed a little and slipped the chain inside her dress. Ramsay leaned forward. He gave us all a look and a smile flickered in his eyes.

"That's a pretty chain of Mrs. Ramsay's, isn't it?"

"I noticed it at once," answered Mr. Kelada. "Gee, I said to myself, those are pearls all right."

"I didn't buy it myself, of course. I'd be interested to know how much you think it cost."

"Oh, in the trade somewhere round fifteen thousand dollars. But if it was bought on Fifth Avenue I shouldn't be surprised to hear that anything up to thirty thousand was paid for it."

Ramsay smiled grimly

"You'll be surprised to hear that Mrs. Ramsay bought that string at a department store the day before we left New York, or eighteen dollars."

Mr. Kelada flushed.

"Rot. It's not only real, but it's as fine a string for its size as I've ever seen."

"Will you bet on it? I'll bet you a hundred dollars it's imitation."

"Done."

"Oh, Elmer, you can't bet on a certainty," said Mr. Ramsay.

She had a little smile on her lips and her tone was gently deprecating.

"Can't I? If I get a chance of easy money like that I should be all sorts of a fool not to take it."

"But how can it be proved?" she continued. "It's only my word against Mr. Kelada's."

"Let me look at the chain, and if it's imitation I'll tell you quickly enough. I can afford to lose a hundred dollars," said Mr. Kelada.

"Take it off, dear. Let the gentleman look at it as much as he wants."

Mrs. Ramsay hesitated a moment. She put her hands to the clasp.

"I can't undo it," she said. "Mr. Kelada will just have to take my word for it."

I had a sudden suspicion that something unfortunate was about to occur, but I could think of nothing to say.

Ramsay jumped up.

"I'll undo it."

He handed the chain to Mr. Kelada. The Levantine took a magnifying glass from his pocket and closely examined it. A smile of triumph spread over his smooth and swarthy face. He handed back the chain. He was about to speak. Suddenly he caught sight of Mrs. Ramsay's face. It was so white that she looked as though she were about to faint. She was staring at him with wide and terrified eyes. They held a desperate appeal; it was so clear that I wondered why her husband did not see it.

Mr. Kelada stopped with his mouth open. He flushed deeply. You could almost see the effort he was making over himself.

"I was mistaken," he said. "It's a very good imitation, but of course as soon as I looked through my glass I saw that it wasn't real. I think eighteen dollars is just about as much as the damned thing's worth."

He took out his pocketbook and from it a hundred dollar bill. He handed it to Ramsay without a word.

"Perhaps that'll teach you not to be so cocksure another time, my young friend," said Ramsay as he took the note.

I noticed that Mr. Kelada's hands were trembling.

The story spread over the ship as stories do, and he had to put up with a good deal of chaff that evening. It was a fine joke that Mr. Know-All had been caught out. But Mrs. Ramsay retired to her state-room with a headache.

Next morning I got up and began to shave. Mr. Kelada lay on his bed smoking a cigarette. Suddenly there was a small scraping sound and I saw a letter pushed under the door. I opened the door and looked I here was nobody there. I picked up the letter and saw that it was addressed to Max Kelada. The name was written in block letters. I handed it to him.

"Who's this from?" He opened it. "Oh!"

He took out of the envelope, not a letter, but a hundred-dollar bill. He looked at me and again he reddened. He tore the envelope into little bits and gave them to me.

"Do you mind just throwing them out of the porthole?"

I did as he asked, and then I looked at him with a smile.

"No one likes being made to look a perfect damned fool," he said.

"Were the pearls real?"

"If I had a pretty little wife I shouldn't let her spend a year in New York while I stayed at Kobe," said he.

At that moment I did not entirely dislike Mr. Kelada. He reached out for his pocketbook and carefully put in it the hundred-dollar note.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

PART 1

1. **sink** – if your heart sinks, you lose hope

Her heart sank when she heard the result.

2. **share** – to have or use smth with others; to have smth in common

There is only one bedroom, so we ill have to share.

3. **dismay** – a feeling of shock and of being discouraged

To his dismay, she told him that she had lost her job.

4. **luggage** – bags, cases, containing smb`s belongings and taken on a journey

All luggage must be checked.

5. **unpack** – to take out things packed in a bag, case, etc

We unpacked our suitcases as soon as we arrived.

6. **scent** – smell of smth; a liquid substance with a pleasant smell.

I have one scent bottle.

7. **scrub** – cleaning

I gave the table a good scrub.

8. **wave** – to move smth around in the air

The starter waved a green flag to indicate that the race would begin.

9. **sturdy** – strong, fit and healthy

Mrs Harding herself was thin and frail but her son was a sturdy sixteen-year- old.

10. **betray** – to show what or who one really is

He had a good disguise, but as soon as he spoke he betrayed himself.

11. **flash** – to give a look, express a feeling, etc suddenly and quickly

He flashed her charming smile.

12. **order** – to ask for food or drink in a restaurant or hotel

I'd like to order the salmon, please.

13. **familiar** – having a good knowledge of smth

I was now getting much more familiar with the local area.

14. **address** – to direct a remark or written statement to smb/smith

Please address all complains to the manager.

- 15. last** – to continue for a period of time
How long do you think this fine weather will last?
- 16. seize** – to quickly take smth in your hand
Hearing a noise, he seized his gun from the drawer.
- 17. snub** – to insult someone by ignoring them or being rude to them
I tried to be friendly but she snubbed me completely
- 18. suspicion** – a feeling that someone has done smth wrong
She had a suspicion that M. Engel was not being completely honest.
- 19. arrange** – organize smth
I'm trying to arrange a meeting with their sales director.
- 20. intolerable** – impossible to bear or deal with:
The noise is making our lives intolerable.
- 21. hearty** – loud and cheerful
A hearty and boisterous fellow.
- 22. jovial** – very cheerful and friendly
I am in a jovial mood.
- 23. chap** – a man or boy
He is a nice chap.
- 24. indifferent** – having no interest in smb/smith
It's easy to be indifferent to money when you've never been poor.
- 25. except for** – not including smb/ smth
We could answer all questions except for the last one.
- 26. resent** – to feel bitter or angry about smth insulting, offensive
I deeply resent you implying that I would be involved in anything like that.
- 27. cocksureness** – confidence, in a way that annoys other people
He is so cocksure – I'd love to see him proved wrong.
- 28. resume** – to start smth again after stopping temporarily
After saying that, Tom resumed his work and ignored us completely.
- 29. fetch** – to go to where someone is and bring them home
She asked me to come and fetch her.
- 30. achieve** – to succeed in doing or having what you planned or intended
The Republic of Tunisia achieved independence from France in 1957.
- 31. possess** – to have smth as a quality or a characteristic
The new prime minister possessed a strong will.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. odor, aroma, fragrance, smell _____
2. grasp, grab, clutch, snatch _____
3. be rude, insult, humiliate _____
4. unbearable, impossible _____
5. carry, collect, deliver _____
6. apathetic, careless, cold, distant _____
7. restart, pick-up, proceed _____
8. continue, keep, remain _____
9. alarm, depression, disappointment _____
10. organize, style, form, adjust _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. These flowers have no _____.
A. scent B. dismay C. chap D. alarm
2. He _____ my bag and ran off with it.
A. resumed B. insulted C. seized D. continued
3. The classmates had _____ her in high school.
A. snubbed B. arranged C. fetched D. collected
4. This is _____! I've been kept waiting for three hours!
A. indifferent B. careless C. jovial D. intolerable
5. He is a very arrogant person. He is _____ to public opinion.
A. indifferent B. dismayed C. attentive D. familiar
6. I have to _____ the children from school.
A. last B. snatch C. fetch D. adjust
7. After saying that, Tom _____ his work and ignored us completely.
A. resumed B. dismayed C. humiliated D. remained
8. The game _____ 80 minutes.
A. carries B. lasts C. arranges D. grabs
9. They stared at each other in _____.
A. dismay B. scent C. luggage D. odor
10. A helicopter food drop was _____ by the Red Cross.
A. snubbed B. arranged C. remained D. restarted

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

snub	fetch	seize	intolerable	last
scent	arrange	dismay	resume	indifferent

1. Living conditions at the farm worker's camp were _____.
2. "Come with me," said Nat, _____ him by the arm.
3. He was _____ because his friends did not invite him to the party.
4. Two police bloodhounds followed the boy's _____ to the old house.
5. _____ my children at once.
6. Politicians were seen as _____ to the hard-working middle class
7. Sherman _____ his walk toward First Avenue.
8. The thought of leaving filled him with _____.
9. The war _____ for five years.
10. Her marriage was _____ by her parents.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. dismay | A. anxiety | B. aroma | C. happiness | D. grasp |
| 2. intolerable | A. impossible | B. indifferent | C. sturdy | D. intolerant |
| 3. indifferent | A. caring | B. rude | C. cocksure | D. distant |
| 4. resume | A. keep | B. proceed | C. snatch | D. stop |
| 5. seize | A. lose | B. grab | C. style | D. deliver |
| 6. scent | A. odor | B. alarm | C. chap | D. order |
| 7. snub | A. insult | B. praise | C. adjust | D. continue |
| 8. fetch | A. leave | B. restart | C. clutch | D. carry |
| 9. arrange | A. organize | B. be rude | C. mess | D. proceed |
| 10. last | A. form | B. stop | C. continue | D. flash |

PART 2

1. drift – to move, to preside

The conversation drifted from one topic to another.

2. inevitably – without doubt; certainly

Inevitably, these negotiations will take time.

3. diminish – to decrease, to make sth less important.

I did not intend to diminish the importance of her work.

4. value – the amount that smth is worth, measured especially in money

The value of the painting is not known.

5. rush – to hurry to do smth

The phone rang, and Hayley rushed to answer it.

6. resist – to stop yourself from doing smth that you would very much like to do

It's difficult to resist a challenge like that.

7. opportunity – a chance to do smth

The program gives students the opportunity to learn more about global warming

8. vehement – showing or caused by strong feeling, passionate

He has a vehement dislike of loud pop music.

9. trade – a particular area of business or industry

10. worth – if you say how much smth is worth, you state its value in money

I didn't think the furniture would be worth anything.

11. vaguely – slightly

The interview made him look vaguely ridiculous.

12. errand – a small job that involves going to collect or deliver smth

I'm about to send Tom out on an errand.

13. flush – if someone flushes, their face becomes red

Lisa flushed and looked away.

14. notice – to become conscious of someone or smth

I noticed that the door was open.

15. string – thin rope used for tying things together

A parcel tied with string.

- 16. deprecating** – showing that you do not approve of smth or someone
His book includes a deprecating reference to Reagan's economic policy.
- 17. prove** – to provide evidence that shows that smth is true
You have to prove you are looking for work.
- 18. afford** – to have enough money to be able to pay for smth
We need a bigger house, but we just can't afford the rent.
- 19. hesitate** – to be slow to speak or act because one feels uncertain or unwilling
He hesitated a moment, and then knocked on the door.
- 20. undo** – to open, untie, or remove smth
He quickly undid the screws that held the cassette together.
I can't undo my belt.
- 21. unfortunate** – slightly embarrassing or offensive
He had an unfortunate habit of getting drunk and behaving badly at parties.
- 22. examine** – to look at smth in order to find out about it or see what it is like
She opened the suitcase and examined the contents.
- 23. faint** – to lose consciousness because of heat, shock, etc
He fainted from hunger.
- 24. terrified** – extremely frightened
The terrified refugees/victims
- 25. retire** – to leave a place, position, or way of life
In the evenings, Lloyd retired to his study to write.
- 26. push** – to move someone or smth away from you
Let's push the table nearer the wall.
- 27. envelope** – a flat paper container that can be sealed and in which letters are sent
She folded the letter carefully, put it in the envelope, and sealed the flap.
- 28. redden** – become red in the face because you are embarrassed, angry, or hot
Her face reddened in embarrassment.
- 29. entirely** – completely, or in every way
The task is to be handled entirely by federal employees.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. reduce, decrease, shrink, cut down _____
2. amount, cost, importance _____
3. analyze, check, inspect, study _____
4. doubt, be uncertain, be reluctant _____
5. scared, frightened, horrified _____
6. avoid, confront, repel _____
7. chance, occasion, moment _____
8. affirm, establish, justify _____
9. business, deal, commerce _____
10. certainly, surely, unavoidably _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The opposition is trying to _____ our achievements.
A. hesitate B. repel C. diminish D. retire
2. These wines offer tremendous _____ just now.
A. trade B. moment C. errand D. value
3. He picks up each item and _____ it carefully.
A. looks B. examines C. proves D. avoids
4. My mother never _____ to tell me when I look bad.
A. hesitates B. diminishes C. affirms D. checks
5. He was unable to _____ the temptation of taking the wallet.
A. examine B. resist C. doubt D. cost
6. Recent excellent results have _____ their critics wrong.
A. proved B. shrunk C. horrified D. pushed
7. A series of missed _____ have badly weakened the company.
A. drifts B. amounts C. cuts D. opportunities
8. The two leaders signed agreements on _____ and sporting links.
A. value B. occasions C. trade D. faints
9. Liz was _____ that Anna would fall.
A. terrified B. inevitable C. retired D. reddened
10. That kind of huge success _____ attracts admirers.
A. vaguely B. likely C. inevitably D. doubtedly

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

diminish	examine	terrified	resist	trade
value	hesitate	inevitably	opportunity	prove

1. The time Foreman spent with his children gradually _____.
2. We notice a decline in the _____ of the dollar.
3. She _____ before replying.
4. Detectives _____ the room for fingerprints.
5. He was _____ at the prospect of flying for the first time.
6. She could not _____ making jokes.
7. The fall in demand for cars will _____ mean some workers losing their jobs.
8. Do not miss the _____ – it may never come again.
9. I shall _____ to you that that witness is lying.
10. In the past twenty years, Japan's _____ with Europe has increased.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. value | A. importance | B. chance | C. commerce | D. idea |
| 2. hesitate | A. frighten | B. avoid | C. doubt | D. inspect |
| 3. examine | A. establish | B. repel | C. inspect | D. shrink |
| 4. resist | A. analyze | B. make sure | C. cost | D. confront |
| 5. prove | A. affirm | B. reduce | C. deal | D. undo |
| 6. opportunity | A. chance | B. business | C. amount | D. doubt |
| 7. diminish | A. decrease | B. increase | C. study | D. prove |
| 8. trade | A. moment | B. string | C. business | D. rush |
| 9. inevitably | A. impossible | B. surely | C. distantly | D. reluctantly |
| 10. terrified | A. inspected | B. justified | C. frightened | D. bored |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

PART 1

- 1. put up with** – to tolerate or bear smb/smth

I don't know how she puts up with his drinking.

- 2. look on (upon)** – to think of someone or something in a particular way

We're not related but I look on him as a brother.

- 3. call for** – to demand; to make a short visit; to say that smth must happen; to go to get

The situation called for drastic measures.

I'll call for you at 7 o'clock.

Several of the newspapers were calling for his resignation.

John called for Mary to take her to the dance.

- 4. come up to** – to move towards someone, usually because you want to talk to them

Strangers come up to him in the street and say how much they enjoy his books.

- 5. take out** – to remove something from a pocket, bag etc:

Henry took out his wallet.

- 6. go on** – to continue happening or doing something as before

The meeting went on a lot longer than I expected.

- 7. occur to** – to start to think about smth

The thought of giving up never occurred to me.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. put up with | a. to demand |
| 2. call for | b. to move |
| 3. take out | c. to remove |
| 4. come up to | d. to accept without complaining |
| 5. go on | e. to continue |
| 6. occur to | f. to come into smb mind |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. She tolerates his violent temper.
2. He is moving towards his client.

3. He went to get children to take them to school.
4. The officer started to remove her notebook.
5. We can't continue like this any more. Things have got to change.
6. I suppose it didn't come into your mind to phone the police?

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I will not _____ your bad behavior any longer!
2. Could you help me _____ my contact lens?
3. It never seems to _____ my children to contact me.
4. Henry _____ his wallet.
5. Has he _____ his parcel yet?
6. Burton smiled and _____ his work.

PART 2

1. look into – to investigate or examine smth

A working party has been set up to look into the problem.

2. hand back – to return smth to a person who owns it or to where it belongs

She handed me back the letter.

3. catch out – to put someone in an unpleasant or difficult situation

They came close to being caught out by the weather during another climb on Mont Blanc.

4. pick up – to lift someone or smth up from a surface

He picked the phone up and dialled.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1. look into | a. to find out the truth |
| 2. hand back | b. to lift |
| 3. catch out | c. to put smb in a difficult situation |
| 4. pick up | d. to give smth back |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. Police are investigating the disappearance of two children.
2. Kurt examined the document and returned it to her.
3. Even the best whitewater rafters get put in an unpleasant situation by the fierce rapids here.
4. He lifted the letter and read it.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. The phone rang and I _____ it _____.
2. Jean _____ the letter _____ to Doug.
3. I wrote a letter of complaint, and the airline has promised to _____ the matter.
4. They tried to _____ her _____ with a difficult question.

C. I D I O M S

PARTS 1 -2

- 1. make one's way** – to start moving towards a place

We made our way to the front of the crowd.

- 2. be all for** – to believe strongly that smth is desirable

He is all for more nursery schools being built.

- 3. to all appearance** – based on a situation seems

She was, to all appearance, enjoying the challenges of a new job.

- 4. set (put) smb at ease** – to make smb feel relaxed

Try to put the candidate at ease by being friendly and informal.

- 5. take a seat** – to occupy

I'll be happy to take a seat when Robin takes over.

- 6. be at the mercy of** – unable to protect yourself from smth or smb unpleasant

Poor people are increasingly at the mercy of money lenders.

- 7. drop a subject** – to leave a subject of a conversation

This is a disgusting conversation let's drop the subject.

- 8. bring someone (a)round** – to persuade

The last debate brought a lot of voters around to our candidate.

9. have smth one's own way – what you want happened happens

She always has her own way in the end.

10. have a fling – to have enjoyment

I had a fling last summer vacation.

– to have a brief casual love affair

I had a few flings in my younger days.

11. go on an errand – to go to a short journey to take a message, buy or deliver goods

He was going to Moscow on some commercial errand.

12. take one's word for it – to believe

Don't just take her word for it- go and see for yourself.

13. bet someone smth (on) – to risk money on a race or on some other events of which the result is doubtful

He spends all his money betting on horses.

14. be about to do smth – to be intended to do smth

We are about to start. I am not about to admit defeat.

15. catch sight – to see smb/smith for a moment

She caught sight of a car in the distance.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

to all appearance	go on an errand	be all for	catch sight
take one's word for it	be at the mercy of	be about to do smth	

1. _____, he doesn't work hard.
2. This action would leave them _____ of industrialized countries.
3. I walked slowly, hoping she would _____ of me.
4. I am _____ giving people more freedom.
5. It was the children's job to _____.
6. Her father is _____ to retire.
7. You can _____, she is not their.

2. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

bet on	set smb at one's ease	bring someone round
take a seat	drop a subject	have a fling

1. She had a brief _____ while her husband was away.
2. Come in, _____.
3. I told him which horse to _____.
4. He had heard enough about my operation, so I just _____.
5. The interviewer did all she could to _____.
6. I knew I could _____ if I just had enough time to talk to her.

D. WORD STUDY

OFFER ▪ SUGGEST ▪ PROPOSE

1. offer — to give someone smth

They haven't offered me the job yet.

A lot of people have offered us very useful advice.

They offered him a very good salary, but he turned it down.

He offered me a cup of tea before I left.

— to help or to do smth for smth

He offered to lend him some money, but he said no.

2. suggest — to offer an idea or a plan for someone to consider

Where do you suggest we go after the movie?

To save money the girls suggested travelling in one car.

— to indicate, show

Trends in spending and investment suggest a gradual economic recovery.

Opinion polls suggest that only 10% of the population trusts the government.

3. propose — to formally suggest a plan, idea, or action

I propose we continue the meeting tomorrow.

The report also proposes extending the motorway.

The resolution was proposed by the chairman of the International Committee.

— to ask someone to marry you, especially in a formal way

Shaun proposed to me only six months after we met.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. I _____ we have dinner first, and then watch the film.
2. Actually, Jen's giving me a lift home – but thanks for _____.
3. Can anyone _____ what we should do to increase sales?
4. He _____ marriage, but she refused.
5. He _____ her a cigarette.
6. It was _____ that we postpone making a decision until next month.
7. She _____ setting up a new committee.
8. If there is a problem, we _____ contacting the manufacturer directly.
9. Smaller hotels often _____ greater comfort at lower prices.
10. As its name _____, the Carlton Beach Hotel is situated near the sea.
11. France has _____ creating a rapid-reaction force to deal with the crisis.
12. What do these symptoms _____ (to you)?
13. Einstein _____ his theory of general relativity in 1915.
14. Can _____ you an inexpensive restaurant?
15. I've been _____ a gob in Japan.
16. I do think you should have _____ to help.

▪ LOOK ▪

1. look after – to take care of

It's hard work looking after three children all day. .

2. look at – to read

The man said he was a policeman and I believed him I was completely taken in.

to direct your eyes towards someone or smth so that you can
see them

He turned and looked at her.

consider

We're looking carefully at all the options.

3. look for – to hope to get something that you want or need

He was looking for work as a builder.

to search for

I'm looking for Jim. Have you seen him?

4. look up – to try to find a particular piece of information by looking in a book or on a list, or by using a computer

I didn't know what 'loquacious' meant and had to look it up in a dictionary.

to go and see someone you know when you are visiting the place where they live

Look me up next time you come to Sydney.

to get better

Finally, things are looking up for me.

5. look over – to examine something, usually quickly

He'd been looking over the leaflets he'd picked up earlier.

to visit a place in order to examine it

An American inspection team had looked over sites in January..

6. look up to – to respect and admire

He's a role model for other players to look up to.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. She looks _____ Mrs. Brown's children three times a month.
2. The firm looks _____ employees with lots of motivation.
3. The police are looking _____ the matter and hoping to find a solution soon.
4. Look _____ this manuscript and tell me what you think of it.
5. We have been looking _____ a new flat for months.
6. Look _____ the time of the next train in the timetable.
7. He looks _____ his older brother and follows his example.
8. Inflation is coming down and things are definitely looking _____.
9. We will be looking _____ an improvement in your work this term.
10. To look _____ him you would never think he was a successful businessman.
11. I am looking _____ his affairs while he is in hospital.
12. The committee would not even look _____ my proposal.
13. She has always looked _____ her father.
14. We must look _____ the house before we rent it.
15. I am sorry I have not had time to _____ your composition yet.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The sweet _____ of incense filled the air.
A. value B. trade C. scent D. dismay
2. Three women were _____ at gunpoint.
A. seized B. lasted C. resisted D. snubbed
3. Living conditions at that campus were _____.
A. intolerable B. inevitable C. terrified D. indifferent
4. The trial will _____ on Wednesday morning.
A. resume B. diminish C. possess D. examine
5. I have to _____ the children from school.
A. preserve B. fetch C. resist D. prove
6. Tate said the fences threaten to _____ property values in the neighborhood.
A. avoid B. increase C. resume D. diminish
7. The team _____ the wreckage thoroughly.
A. examined B. seized C. proved D. scared
8. He who _____ is lost.
A. proceeds B. arranges C. hesitates D. accepts
9. He _____ demands for public enquiry.
A. traded B. fetched C. resisted D. valued
10. Children fail to progress if their parents seem _____ to their success.
A. indifferent B. unbearable C. dishonest D. terrified
11. His speech _____ for exactly fourteen minutes.
A. took B. lasted C. hesitated D. insulted
12. What will happen to the _____ of my property?
A. opportunity B. fragrance C. value D. trade
13. He was able to _____ that he was an American.
A. snub B. collect C. prove D. resist
14. Progressive Tours _____ holidays in Eastern Europe.
A. justify B. arrange C. clutch D. escort
15. It was impossible to hide my _____ at what I had seen.
A. chance B. dismay C. cause D. deal

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

resume	last	snub	hesitate	value
fetch	intolerable	scent	prove	examine
diminish	seize	arrange	resist	indifferent

1. It's _____ to allow hardened criminals to roam our streets.
2. The air has a _____ of knavery.
3. Everyone got a prize, whether they were good, bad or _____.
4. She was ready to _____ her duties.
5. He _____ a bucket of water from the pond.
6. As he turned the knob the sound _____.
7. He _____ her arm and dragged her into the kitchen.
8. She put her hand on the phone, _____ for a moment, then picked up the receiver.
9. Profits are as high as ever. It won't _____.
10. Everyone realizes the _____ of sincerity.
11. Government experts were still _____ the wreckage of the plane.
12. We've _____ with somebody else to go to the cinema.
13. She has to be _____ wrong.
14. I tried to be friendly but she _____ me completely.
15. Our trade union has _____ the introduction of automation.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. resume | A. restart | B. repel | C. establish | D. justify |
| 2. fetch | A. keep | B. style | C. collect | D. appear |
| 3. diminish | A. reduce | B. insult | C. cost | D. support |
| 4. indifferent | A. unbearable | B. careless | C. certain | D. sturdy |
| 5. last | A. remain | B. inspect | C. snatch | D. affirm |
| 6. value | A. event | B. occasion | C. fragrance | D. importance |

7. examine	A. confront	B. check	C. shrink	D. occur
8. opportunity	A. chance	B. commerce	C. topic	D. cost
9. intolerable	A. horrified	B. cocksure	C. apathetic	D. unbearable
10. seize	A. confront	B. grasp	C. deliver	D. reduce
11. snub	A. posses	B. insult	C. continue	D. worth
12. scent	A. from	B. business	C. smell	D. alarm
13. dismay	A. anxiety	B. action	C. odor	D. moment
14. arrange	A. humiliate	B. adjust	C. grab	D. avoid
15. hesitate	A. bet	B. resist	C. doubt	D. resume
16. terrified	A. intolerable	B. hearty	C. reluctant	D. scared
17. prove	A. justify	B. ignore	C. order	D. disregard
18. inevitably	A. avoidably	B. certainly	C. distantly	D. uncertainly
19. trade	A. aroma	B. imitation	C. moment	D. deal
20. resist	A. affirm	B. avoid	C. deliver	D. keep

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to the boldfaces word.

1. resume	A. pick-up	B. cease	C. adjust	D. form
2. diminish	A. reduce	B. repel	C. increase	D. support
3. indifferent	A. cold	B. interested	C. scared	D. certain
4. last	A. collect	B. appear	C. stop	D. keep
5. value	A. cost	B. avoid	C. neglect	D. shrink
6. intolerable	A. unbearable	B. sure	C. inevitable	D. tolerable
7. seize	A. release	B. examine	C. deliver	D. happen
8. snub	A. praise	B. insult	C. care	D. grab
9. arrange	A. form	B. disorganize	C. check	D. affirm
10. hesitate	A. decide	B. resist	C. carry	D. doubt
11. prove	A. falsify	B. ignore	C. grasp	D. provide
12. resist	A. repel	B. analyze	C. accept	D. humiliate

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I can not think why I _____ it.
2. I _____ at the station _____ my luggage.
3. I _____ it as a challenge.
4. How many teeth did the dentist _____?
5. Are you trying to _____ me _____?
6. He stooped down to _____ the two pebbles.
7. It didn't _____ her to ask how he'd found her.
8. She promised to _____ the matter.
9. The officer _____ me my passport _____.
10. We cannot _____ like this.
11. Why don't you _____ him?

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. _____, he is guilty.
2. _____, telling the truth.
3. She is _____ to faint.
4. I rang the theatre to see if I could _____ for the show.
5. He _____ me a hundred pounds that I would not get through.
6. He _____ while his wife was at Kobe.
7. After a good deal of discussion he _____ to his way of thinking.
8. We were left _____ of the arresting officer.
9. John has _____, he will be back shortly.
10. He _____ with strangers.
11. I _____ of woman's face.
12. _____, he was dead.
13. He was, _____, a respectable, successful businessman.
14. Just _____, will you? I don't want to talk about it any more.
15. How much do you want to _____ this race?

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-, im-, un-, dis-*.

_____ like _____ important _____ tolerable _____ possible
_____ pack _____ do _____ fortunate _____ patient

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. It would be _____ to gather this information without using computers.
2. Philip thoroughly _____ her.
3. Can you please _____ the shopping?
4. This book is _____ to read without crying.
5. He is widely _____ at every level of politics.
6. I can't _____ my belt.
7. The noise is making our lives _____.
8. He is a bit _____ with slow learners.
9. I haven't had time to _____ yet.
10. Women's education was seen as _____.
11. Dealing with her illness makes life pretty _____ for the rest of the family.
12. It's _____ to see that so few people are willing to help.
13. He quickly _____ the screws that held the cassette together.
14. She warned that one mistake could _____ all their achievements.
15. Living conditions at the farm worker's camp were _____.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. The ban on arms exports remains _____ force.
2. He was _____ jewelry trade.
3. He slammed the door _____ his face.
4. There's a telephone box _____ the department store.
5. Ben will be _____ his way to Denmark tonight.
6. I've just come over _____ a visit.
7. I'll meet you downstairs _____ ten minutes.
8. There was a large cat sitting _____ the middle of the road.
9. A customs officer came _____ to board the ship.
10. Jamie stayed _____ the hotel for three days.
11. She was dressed all in black except _____ a white lace collar.
12. Pay particular attention _____ the warnings printed on the label.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. I share this flat _____ five other people.
2. We still haven't paid them _____ the repairs to the roof.
3. Indonesia is a nation of over 200 million people, spread _____ 17,000 islands.
4. If you look _____ this window, you can see the cathedral.
5. It wouldn't be sensible to hope _____ immediate success.
6. He pointed _____ the dog as it ran towards them.
7. He lifted his head and stared _____ her.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. How could he refuse _____ (help) his own son?
2. He suddenly realized he had forgotten _____ (lock) his door.
3. I was fool enough _____ (trust) her.
4. It's worth _____ (talk) to your financial adviser before making your final decision.
5. I expect _____ (get) paid on time.
6. Is it too early _____ (phone) them?
7. Would you show me how _____ (send) an email?
8. My dad has offered _____ (give a lift) to the station.
9. I don't mind _____ (go) if no one else wants to.
10. He decided _____ (stay) and see what would happen.
11. I don't enjoy _____ (go) on holiday as much as I used to.
12. The book is definitely worth _____ (read).
13. She couldn't help _____ (laugh) when she saw it.
14. If there is a mechanical problem, we suggest _____ (contact) the manufacturer directly.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *say* or *tell*.

1. She _____ that she liked dancing.
2. He finally _____ me the reason why he was so upset.

3. _____ me what he promised to you.
4. The committee _____ yes, so we can go ahead.
5. Jim _____ me that he was playing in the school basketball team.
6. Sally _____ that she had lost her keys.
7. She _____ the truth in his face.
8. My parrot can _____ a few words in English.
9. My mother _____ me a story before I went to bed.
10. He always _____ good mornings to his neighbors.
11. I _____ her a lie about what I was doing.
12. Sarah _____ something about coming over later.

7. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. He said, "I'll go to the dentist."

2. Dad said, "We are leaving in June."

3. Ann said, "I forgot to take a dog for a walk."

4. He said, "The Browns are looking for a new house."

5. He said, "I am mistaken."

6. She said to Carol, "We bought a flat two month ago."

7. He said, "I'll paint the garage."

8. She said to Julie, "It will be sunny tomorrow."

9. He said, "Penguins can not fly."

10. Brad said, "I don not like milk."

8. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. She asked, "Have you seen my dog?"

2. Harry asked, "Will you take me to the beach?"

3. She asked, "Are you having lunch or going out?"

4. He asked, "Did you buy any bread?"

5. They asked, "Are you going to the post office?"

6. She asked, "Is Sheila your best friend?"

7. Mother asked, "Do you like playing volleyball?"

8. She asked, "Do you like milk?"

9. Jan asked, "Did you order a birthday cake?"

10. She asked, "Are you OK?"

9. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. She asked, "Where is the bus station?"

2. He asked, "Where have you come from?"

3. She asked, "Where is the post office?"

4. They asked, "When does the film start?"

5. They asked, "What is the time?"

6. She asked, "How much does this cost?"

7. Mother asked, "When does this bus leave?"

8. She asked, "Who called the police?"

9. Jan asked, "How did the accident happen?"

10. She asked, "When will you move to Italy?"

10. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. He is cocksure and *also/moreover* stubborn.
2. Bob is self confident *as well as/ both and* not cautious.
3. *In addition / Besides* to being enthusiastic he is also versatile.
4. She is modest *in addition / as well as* she is reserved.
5. He is opinionated and outspoken *as well/ as well as*.
6. He is *both/as well* creative *and/as* versatile.
7. He is ambitious *moreover/in addition to* self confident.
8. He is faithful *in addition / as well as* tolerant.

11. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. She has a pleasant personality *but/although* she can be unsociable at times.
2. *Although/However* I like it here? I won't stay here long.
3. He is usually self-centered *nevertheless/ although* he can be tolerant.
4. She is unreliable *although /however* she tends to be thankful.
5. She felt ill, *but/although* she went to school.
6. *Although/Nevertheless* we warned him, Harry still got lost.
7. *But/Although* he was ill, Bob went to the post office.

12. Join the ideas using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. He is decisive. He tends to be cautious at times. (*in addition /although*)
2. He is usually energetic. He tends to be bossy. (*however/ also*)
3. Helen picked up her suitcase. She picked up her umbrella. (*as well/but*)
4. He is trusting. He is naive. (*but/also*)
5. He is faithful. He is tolerant. (*moreover/ however*)
6. Helen plays the guitar. She writes songs.(*also/nevertheless*)
7. He is sociable. He can be moody at times. (*but/ as well*)
8. He is messy. He is disorganized. (*moreover/ but*)
9. She is sociable. She is bad-tempered. (*although /as well as*)
10. Jane felt wet. She felt miserable. (*both and/ although*)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

1. What was Mr. Kelada like?
2. Why did people call him Mr. Know-All?
3. How did the conversation touch the matter of culture pearls?
4. Describe the behavior of Mrs. Ramsay during the conversation.
5. Why did Mr. Kelada and Mr. Ramsay decide to bet?
6. How did Mr. Kelada manage to avoid the scandal?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

1. Why do you think W.S. Maugham named the story “Mr. Know-All”?
2. Why did people hate Mr. Kelada ?
3. Why did Mrs. Ramsay turn so pale?
4. What was the real reason that Mrs. Ramsay did not tell the truth?
5. What would be Mr. Ramsey’s reaction if he learned the real cost of the necklace?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list each character qualities /habits. Then give examples of their behavior.

Character	Qualities/Habits	Behavior
1. Mr. Kelada	sociable	In three days he knew everyone on board.
2.Mr.Ramsay	not cautious	He bet \$100 that the pearls were real.
3.Mrs.Ramsay	modest	She was always dressed simply.

2. Think of some examples of cause-and-effect relationship in this story. Then complete the following chart.

Cause	Effect
1.	1. Mr. Kelada knew a lot about pearls.
2. Mr. Ramsay had a fling.	2.
3.	3. They decided to bet.
4. Mr. Kelada caught sight of Mrs. Ramsey's face.	4.
5.	5. Mrs. Ramsay was about to faint.
6.	6.
7.	7.
8.	8.
9.	9.
10.	10.

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss the passengers' attitude to Mr. Kelada. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
2. There is a saying 'Appearances are deceptive'. How does it apply to the story you have read?
3. Do you agree that the first impression is always the right one?
4. Why did the author change his attitude to Mr. Kelada?
5. Think about what might have happened if Mr. Kelada had told the truth.

E. WRITING

1. Compare Mr. Kelada and Mr. Ramsay. In what way are they alike? How are they different?
2. Write a short paragraph describing the events during dinner as it would be told by Mr. Kelada /Mr. Ramsay.

UNIT 2

A Friend in Need

W. S. Maugham

PART 1

For thirty years now I have been studying my fellow-men. I do not know very much about them. I should certainly hesitate to engage a servant on his face, and yet I suppose it is on the face that for the most part we judge the persons we meet. We draw our conclusions from the shape of the jaw, the look in the eyes, the contour of the mouth. I wonder if we are more often right than wrong. Why novels and plays are so often untrue to life is because their authors, perhaps of necessity, make their characters all of a piece. They cannot afford to make them self-contradictory, for then they become incomprehensible, and yet self-contradictory is what most of us are. We are a haphazard bundle of inconsistent qualities. In books on logic they will tell you that it is absurd to say that yellow is tubular or gratitude heavier than air; but in that mixture of incongruities that makes up the self yellow may very well be a horse and cart and gratitude the middle of next week. I shrug my shoulders when people tell me that their first impressions of a person are always right. I think they must have small insight or great vanity. For my own part I find that the longer I know people the more they puzzle me: my oldest friends are just those of whom I can say that I don't know the first thing about them.

These reflections have occurred to me because I read in this morning's paper that Edward Hyde Burton had died at Kobe. He was a merchant and he had been in business in Japan for many years. I knew him very little, but he interested me because once he gave me a great surprise. Unless I had heard the story from his own lips I should never have believed that he was capable of such an action. It was more startling because both in appearance and manner he suggested a very definite type. Here if ever was a man all of a piece. He was a tiny little fellow, not much more than five feet four in height, and very slender, with white hair, a red face much wrinkled,

and blue eyes. I suppose he was about sixty when I knew him. He was always neatly and quietly dressed in accordance with his age and station.

Though his offices were in Kobe, Burton often came down to Yokohama. I happened on one occasion to be spending a few days there, waiting for a ship, and I was introduced to him at the British Club. We played bridge together. He played a good game and a generous one. He did not talk very much, either then or later when we were having drinks, but what he said was sensible. He had a quiet, dry humor. He seemed to be popular at the club and afterwards, when he had gone, they described him as one of the best. It happened that we were both staying at the Grand Hotel and next day he asked me to dine with him. I met his wife, fat, elderly, and smiling, and his two daughters. It was evidently a united and affectionate family. I think the chief thing that struck me about Burton was his kindliness. There was something very pleasing in his mild blue eyes. His voice was gentle; you could not imagine that he could possibly raise it in anger; his smile was benign. Here was a man who attracted you because you felt in him a real love for his fellows. He had charm. But there was nothing mawkish in him: he liked his game of cards and his cocktail, he could tell with point a good and spicy story, and in his youth he had been something of an athlete. He was a rich man and he had made every penny himself. I suppose one thing that made you like him was that he was so small and frail; he aroused your instincts of protection. You felt that he could not bear to hurt a fly.

PART 2

One afternoon I was sitting in the lounge of the Grand Hotel. This was before the earthquake and they had leather arm-chairs there. From the windows you had a spacious view of the harbor with its crowded traffic. There were great liners on their way to Vancouver and San Francisco or to Europe by way of Shanghai, Hong-Kong, and Singapore; there were tramps of all nations, battered and sea-worn, junks with their high sterns and great colored sails, and innumerable sampans. It was a busy,

exhilarating scene, and yet, I know not why, restful to the spirit. Here was romance and it seemed that, you had but to stretch out your hand to touch it.

Burton came into the lounge presently and caught sight of me. He seated himself in the chair next to mine.

"What do you say to a little drink?"

He clapped his hands for a boy and ordered two gin fizzes. As the boy brought them a man passed along the street outside and seeing me waved his hand.

'Do you know Turner?' said Burton as I nodded a greeting.

'I've met him at the club. I'm told he's a remittance man.'

'Yes, I believe he is. We have a good many here.'

'He plays bridge well.'

'They generally do. There was a fellow here last year, oddly enough a namesake of mine, who was the best bridge player I ever met. I suppose you never came across him in London. Lenny Burton he called himself. I believe he'd belonged to some very good clubs.'

'No, I don't believe I remember the name.'

'He was quite a remarkable player. He seemed to have an instinct about cards. It was uncanny. I used to play with him a lot. He was in Kobe for some time.'

Burton sipped his gin fizz.

'It's rather a funny story,' he said. 'He wasn't a bad chap. I liked him. He was always well-dressed and smart-looking. He was handsome in a way with curly hair and pink-and-white cheeks. Women thought a lot of him. There was no harm in him, you know, he was only wild. Of course he drank too much. Those sorts of fellows always do. A bit of money used to come in for him once a quarter and he made a bit more by card-playing. He won a good deal of mine, I know that.'

Burton gave a kindly chuckle. I knew from my own experience that he could lose money at bridge with a good grace. He stroked his shaven chin with his thin hand; the veins stood out on it and it was almost transparent.

'I suppose that is why he came to me when he went broke, that and the fact that he was a namesake of mine. He came to see me in my office one day and asked me for a

job. I was rather surprised. He told me that there was no more money coming from home and he wanted to work. I asked him how old he was.

"Thirty-five," he said.

"And what have you been doing hitherto?" I asked him.

"Well, nothing very much," he said.

I couldn't help laughing.

"I'm afraid I can't do anything for you just yet," I said. "Come back and see me in another thirty-five years, and I'll see what I can do."

He didn't move. He went rather pale. He hesitated for a moment and then he told me that he had had bad luck at cards for some time. He hadn't been willing to stick to bridge, he'd been playing poker and he'd got trimmed. He hadn't a penny. He'd pawned everything he had. He couldn't pay his hotel bill and they wouldn't give him any more credit. He was down and out. If he couldn't get something to do he'd have to commit suicide.

I looked at him for a bit. I could see now that he was all to pieces. He'd been drinking more than usual and he looked fifty. The girls wouldn't have thought so much of him if they'd seen him then.

"Well, isn't there anything you can do except play cards?" I asked him.

"I can swim," he said.

"Swim!"

I could hardly believe my ears; it seemed such an insane answer to give.

"I swam for my university."

I got some glimmering of what he was driving at. I've known too many men who were little tin gods at their university to be impressed by it.

"I was a pretty good swimmer myself when I was a young man," I said.

'Suddenly I had an idea.'

Pausing in his story, Burton turned to me.

'Do you know Kobe?' he asked.

'No,' I said, 'I passed through it once, but I only spent a night there.'

'Then you don't know the Shioya Club. When I was a young man I swam from there round the beacon and landed at the creek of Tarumi. It's over three miles and it's rather difficult on account of the currents round the beacon. Well, I told my young namesake about it and I said to him that if he'd do it I'd give him a job.

I could see he was rather taken aback.

"You say you're a swimmer," I said.

"I'm not in very good condition," he answered.

I didn't say anything. I shrugged my shoulders. He looked at me for a moment and then he nodded.

"All right," he said. "When do you want me to do it?"

I looked at my watch. It was just after ten.

"The swim shouldn't take you much over an hour and a quarter. I'll drive round to the creek at half past twelve and meet you. I'll take you back to the club to dress and then we'll have lunch together."

"Done" he said.

We shook hands. I wished him good luck and he left me. I had a lot of work to do that morning and I only just managed to get to the creek at Tarumi at half past twelve. But I needn't have hurried; he never turned up.'

'Did he flunk it at the last moment?' I asked.

'No, he didn't flunk it. He started all right. But of course he'd ruined his constitution by drink and dissipation. The currents round the beacon were more than he could manage. We didn't get the body for about three days.'

I didn't say anything for a moment or two. I was a trifle shocked. Then I asked Burton a question.

'When you made him that offer of a job, did you know he'd be drowned?'

He gave a little mild chuckle and he looked at me with those kind and candid blue eyes of his. He rubbed his chin with his hand.

'Well, I hadn't got a vacancy in my office at the moment.'

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. judge smb/smith by/from/on smith – form an opinion about smb/smith

Judging by the sounds coming from the room above my neighbor is computer freak.

2. incomprehensible – impossible to understand

Legal documents are full of incomprehensible jargon.

3. contradictory – opposite of what smb has said, different from another fact

We received contradictory accounts about the success of the military campaign.

4. haphazard – without plan or order

Books piled on shelves in a haphazard fashion.

5. a bundle of – a lot of smth., a mass of smth.

The hotel boasts a bundle of facilities.

6. consistent – always happening or behaving in a similar way

The president has been remarkably consistent on economic issues.

7. it is absurd/wise/strange/true to say – is used to show specified attitude towards smth

It is strange to say, I don't really enjoy television.

8. merchant – a person involved in trade or commerce

He was a soap merchant.

9. capable of – having the ability or quality necessary for doing smth

You are capable of better work than this.

10. startling – giving a great surprise

Michael's words had a startling effect on the children.

11. sensible – having or showing the ability to make sound judgements

It was sensible of you to lock the door.

12. seem to be / to do – give the impression of being or doing smth

Martha seems (to be) happy.

13. evident – easily seen, obvious

He is forever going on about his problems. It is evident he is a nag.

14. raise – move or lift smth to a higher position, place or level

Can you raise your arm above your head?

15. benign – kind and gentle

He shook his head in benign amusement.

16. attract – cause smb to become interested in someone or something

The tennis championship will attract a lot of tourists to the city.

17. mawkish – showing too much emotion in a way that is embarrassing

A mawkish love story

18. be smth of an athlete / a gardener etc. – know a lot about / to be very good at smth

Charlie's always been something of an expert on architecture.

19. arouse – make you become interested, expect smth, feel angry etc.

Matt's behavior was arousing the interest of the neighbors.

20. hurt – cause physical injury or pain to smb

He hurt his back when he fell.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. able, adept, skillful | _____ |
| 2. logical, sane, sound, reasonable | _____ |
| 3. a lot of, a mass of, a number of | _____ |
| 4. striking, astonishing, surprising, stunning | _____ |
| 5. clear, intelligible, understandable | _____ |
| 6. casual, random, chaotic, disorderly | _____ |
| 7. captivate, fascinate, tempt | _____ |
| 8. trader, tradesman, purchaser or seller | _____ |
| 9. conflicting, contrary, opposed, opposite | _____ |
| 10. apparent, clear, obvious | _____ |

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. He complained to the manager about the hotel's _____ service.
A. systematic B. enormous C. haphazard D. brilliant
2. We can't rely on such _____ evidence.
A. reasonable B. apparent C. evident D. contradictory
3. We need to find a man _____ of judging art.
A. prone B. capable C. subject D. accused

4. Venice was a city of rich _____.
- A. merchants B. bundles C. attractions D. auctions
5. His frown made it _____ to all that he was displeased.
- A. noisy B. evident C. slow D. gigantic
6. It was very _____ of you to bring your umbrella. It looks as if it is going to rain.
- A. opinionated B. brave C. sensible D. stubborn
7. This type of computer jargon is barely _____ to most people.
- A. haphazard B. chaotic C. difficult D. comprehensible
8. That child is a _____ of mischief!
- A. bundle B. quality C. loner D. evidence
9. I was always _____ to the idea of working overseas.
- A. bound B. attracted C. startled D. stunned
10. Nobody made any response to his _____ suggestion.
- A. capable B. startling C. evidently D. oddly

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

startling	comprehensible	sensible	merchant	bundle
haphazard	contradictory	evident	attract	capable

1. As soon as he entered the laboratory he saw books piled on shelves in a _____ fashion.
2. We've just come by a new microchip that is _____ of a much wider range of application.
3. He's very _____ when it comes to spending money.
4. Despite her _____ distress, she carried on working.
5. Susan is a real _____ of energy.
6. The show _____ the viewers from all walks of life.
7. They are unaware of some _____ issues in their argument.
8. "He is a fish _____." – "I know. He's been in the fish business since 1999."
9. Scientists should make their finding _____ to the public.
10. Mone's paintings are full of _____ images.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. attract	A. bear	B. attribute	C. captivate	D. capture
2. capable	A. cautious	B. keen	C. adequate	D. able
3. merchant	A. tradition	B. trader	C. intruder	D. torture
4. startling	A. depressing	B. striking	C. amusing	D. evident
5. evident	A. amazing	B. obscure	C. apparent	D. vague
6. comprehensible	A. understandable	B. dim	C. intelligent	D. conflicting
7. sensible	A. sane	B. sociable	C. sensitive	D. secure
8. contradictory	A. cautious	B. consistent	C. opposed	D. vain
9. bundle	A. tip	B. mass	C. top	D. massive
10. haphazard	A. hazard	B. rare	C. regular	D. chaotic

Part 2

1. spacious – having or providing a lot of space

White walls give a room a feeling of being spacious.

2. harbor – protected area of water where ships and boats can be safely kept

The ship entered the harbor.

3. remittance man – a man living abroad on money sent from home

"...These fellows are all the same - a ne'er-do-well - a remittance man."

4. odd – strange, unusual

She lives with some very odd characters.

5. have an instinct about – have a natural ability to do smth

John spends a lot of time fishing – it seems that has some kind of instinct about it.

6. uncanny – strange, odd, weird

He's forever cooking some uncanny food.

7. in a way – at some degree.

Living in a dorm is fun in a way.

8. experience – personal participation, actual knowledge

She's got plenty of experience of raising children.

9. transparent – easy to see through, understand

A window is transparent.

10. can't help doing – be unable to stop yourself from doing smth

I can't help thinking that we've made a big mistake.

11. willing to do – having no objections to doing smth or to smth been done

Are you willing to accept responsibility?

12. pawn – leave an object with a pawn broker in exchange for money.

Mr. Big pawned his gold watch to pay the rent.

13. except (for) – apart from, not including smth

I had no money to give him except (for) the few coins in my pocket.

14. impress – have a favorable effect on smb

Steve borrowed his dad's car to impress his girlfriend.

15. be in good condition – be in good state of health or physically fit

Mr. Fisher is in excellent condition for a man of his age.

16. manage – succeed in accomplishing

Bob just managed to scrape through the exam.

17. flunk – give up

He was going to stand up to his boss, but he flunked at the last moment.

18. current – a movement of water or air flowing in a certain direction

The swimmer was swept away by the current.

– the course of events, opinions

Nothing disturbed the peaceful current of life in the village.

19. a trifle – a bit, slightly, a very small amount

She acted a trifle (too) hastily.

20. vacancy – an unoccupied post or office

We have a vacancy in the accounts department.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. queer, strange, weird

2. affect, influence, excite, stir

3. haven, a sheltered place, port

4. diaphanous, clear, gauzy, lucid

5. opening, post, position

6. flow, stream, spurt, torrent _____
7. knowledge, practice, involvement _____
8. give up, back out, surrender _____
9. wide, large, capacious, vast _____
10. pledge, stake, risk _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The magician opened the bag and took a box with a _____ lid.

A. evident	B. haphazard	C. comprehensible	D. transparent
------------	--------------	-------------------	----------------

2. The accomodation was _____ and comfortable.

A. comprehensible	B. spacious	C. consistent	D. done
-------------------	-------------	---------------	---------

3. Not many people have had _____ of real hunger.

A. bundle	B. experience	C. stream	D. trifle
-----------	---------------	-----------	-----------

4. The swimmer was wept away by the _____.

A. current	B. experience	C. bundle	D. currency
------------	---------------	-----------	-------------

5. We have _____ for secretaries with word-processing experience.

A. vocations	B. vacancies	C. violation	D. vivacity
--------------	--------------	--------------	-------------

6. You find his books in the _____ places.

A. widest	B. spacious	C. haphazard	D. oddest
-----------	-------------	--------------	-----------

7. Several boats lay at anchor in the _____.

A. harbor	B. orchestra	C. current	D. spurt
-----------	--------------	------------	----------

8. He _____ when faced with a difficult challenge.

A. fired	B. endured	C. encountered	D. flunked
----------	------------	----------------	------------

9. Her carvings attracted many admirers but her paintings failed to _____.

A. flunk	B. vacillate	C. impress	D. hesitate
----------	--------------	------------	-------------

10. He had to _____ everything to raise some money.

A. surrender	B. falter	C. pawn	D. requite
--------------	-----------	---------	------------

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

odd	vacancy	harbor	spacious	impress
currents	transparent	pawn	experience	flunk

1. We stood enjoying the pure _____ waters of the lake.
2. He hasn't had enough previous _____ for us to give him the job.
3. It is very _____ that he hadn't sent you a birthday present.
4. We reached the _____ at sunset.
5. _____ of warm air keep the hang-glider aloft.
6. I have always dreamed of a very _____ kitchen.
7. I think she is the right person to fill a _____ for a secretary.
8. He was ready to _____ his life to help his friend out.
9. It was a regiment that never _____, even in the fiercest battle.
10. Experience in voluntary work will often _____ a potential employer.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. transparent | A. vague | B. obscure | C. clear | D. dull |
| 2. odd | A. strange | B. wise | C. wide | D. end |
| 3. vacancy | A. roomy | B. opening | C. namesake | D. bundle |
| 4. harbor | A. labor | B. part | C. haven | D. harvest |
| 5. impress | A. express | B. influence | C. effect | D. infect |
| 6. current | A. cash | B. flood | C. stream | D. strike |
| 7. spacious | A. vast | B. special | C. vivacious | D. vivid |
| 8. experience | A. plot | B. bundle | C. knowledge | D. vanity |
| 9. pawn | A. stake | B. take | C. inspire | D. tempt |
| 10. flunk | A. fling | B. give up | C. succumb | D. succeed |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

1. make up – form as a whole, compose, consist of

Animal bodies are made up of cells (consist of).

What are the qualities that make up her character? (compose).

2. come down – (from...) (to...) to come from one place to another

We hope to come down to London next week.

3. stretch out – put out your hand, foot etc in order to reach smth

Jimmy stretched out his hand to take the candy.

4. come across – meet/find by chance

I came across some old photographs in a drawer

5. belong to – be a member of, to be connected with

A helicopter belonging to the oil company has crashed.

6. come in – be received as income

Monica has over a thousand pounds a month coming in from her investments.

7. stand out – be easily seen, to be noticeable, conspicuous

Among Irish writers James Joyce stands out as a superior storyteller.

8. stick to – not deviate from, to continue to do smth in a very determined way

Don't tell us what you think about it, just stick to the facts.

9. drive at – intend / try to say

I wish I knew what they are driving at.

10. take aback – surprise or shock smb

He seemed quite taken aback by the news.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. take aback | a. go from one place to another |
| 2. belong to | b. meet by chance |
| 3. stick to | c. be a member of |
| 4. make up | d. compose, constitute |
| 5. come down | e. persevere in |
| 6. stretch out | f. try to say |
| 7. drive at | g. put out your hand |
| 8. come in | h. be prominent |
| 9. come across | i. startle |
| 10. stand out | j. be received as income |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. She's the sort of person who is noticeable in a crowd.
2. I was somewhat startled by his rudeness.
3. I found by accident an old love letter you sent me two years ago.
4. Society consists of people of widely different abilities.
5. This is a part of the same family of drugs as Prozac.
6. When you say that he can be dishonest, what are you trying to say?
7. That is my story and I'm not deviating from it.
8. Some money was received as income after her uncle died.
9. She extended her arm towards the shelf but couldn't reach it.
10. My parents are going to our place for the weekend.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. We hope to _____ to London next week.
2. "This essay is well-written," – "That's true. Of all the essays this one certainly _____."
3. "Would you like some wine now?" – "No, I'll _____ beer, thanks."
4. I _____ an old friend in Oxford Street this morning.
5. When they asked her to resign, she was _____."
6. Two members of staff and eight parents _____ the school committee.
7. I can see what you are _____.
8. They _____ a different generation.
9. Some money used to _____ for me once a quarter.
10. I _____ a hand to touch her face.

C. I d i o m s

1. draw conclusion – have a particular idea after study, experience, observation

What conclusions did you draw from his report?

2. shrug shoulders – raise one's shoulders to express doubt, lack of interest

I asked her where Sam was but she simply shrugged her shoulders and said nothing.

3. give surprise – make smb feel surprised

Their defeat gave us a little surprise.

4. in accordance with – in agreement or harmony with smth

You are supposed to behave in accordance with the regulations.

5. make money – make a profit

You should jump at any opportunity to make money.

6. go / be broke – lose money, have no money, be ruined financially

Could you lend me some money? I'm completely broke.

7. down and out – without luck and money, or home.

Nate lost everything, he was down and out.

8. be / go all to pieces – be extremely afraid, upset or nervous and lose control of oneself

Jim went completely to pieces when they told him Nina was dead.

9. not believe one's ears / eyes – be unable to believe because one is so surprised

I stared at her barely able to believe my ears.

10. on account of – due to, because of

Mr. Watson retired from his job early on account of his poor health.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

make money	in accordance with	draw conclusions
shrug one's shoulders	give surprise	

1. Most people would have _____ and forgotten it.

2. The policeman acted _____ the law.

3. The business has _____ more _____ this year.

4. Her sudden resignation _____ us _____.

5. What _____ do you _____ from the evidence you've heard?

2. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

down and out	go broke	believe my ears
be all to pieces	on account of	

1. He _____ when they told him she was dead.
2. During the recession thousand of small businesses _____.
3. I stared at her scarcely able to _____.
4. His factory closed down and he had to pawn his apartment. As a result, he was _____.
5. Why did you do it? Was it _____ what I said yesterday?

D. WORD STUDY

ARISE ▪ AROUSE ▪ RAISE ▪ RISE

1. arise – happen, result from

After such destruction many problems in resettlement often arise.

Additional expenses arose from your delay.

When the opportunity arose he decided to take it.

We can have another meeting if the need arises.

I hope this situation will not arise again.

Some confusion has arisen as a result of a new system.

2. arouse – cause an emotion or attitude

These rumors have aroused intense interest among investors.

He came up with a controversial plan that was sure to arouse strong opposition.

This bit of news is sure to arouse their indignation.

He is a kind slow creature. It's not easy to arouse his anger.

He succeeded in arousing the nation's sympathy.

3. raise – put smth in higher position, lift

She raised her finger to her lips as a sign for silence.

A number of children raised their hands.

Bad weather has so far hampered the attempts to raise the vessel.

The rescue team raised the sunken ship from the bottom of the sea to the surface

She raised the gun and fired.

– increase the amount or level of smth (e.g. raise salaries/prices/ taxes)

The money could be found by raising income tax by two per cent.

4. rise – move upwards

The aircraft rose slowly onto the air.

– stand up

He rose and walked over to greet me.

With great effort he rose to his knees.

He rose up and went to the window.

– increase

The price of bread has risen sharply.

Tensions are rising again on the world's most heavily armed border.

Unemployment continues to rise steadily.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. The resignation of the sales manager is certain to _____ new fears about the future of the company.
2. The cost of living _____ by 3 per cent last year.
3. Doubts _____ in his mind.
4. He could hardly _____ the injured arm.
5. Suspicions were _____ when two men were seen running from the bank.
6. A storm _____ during the night.
7. Edward finished his meal quickly and _____ from the table.
8. We must make the document absolutely clear to ensure misunderstanding do not _____.
9. His interest had first been _____ by a trip to the local museum.
10. Problems _____ over the plans to build a new supermarket area.
11. They had _____ their prices to unreasonable levels.
12. Temperatures will _____ steadily towards the end of the week.
13. With a shaky hand he slowly _____ the cup to his lips.
14. A column of thick black smoke could be seen _____ from the town.
15. He _____ his offer to J500.
16. Salaries will continue to _____ in line with inflation.
17. The company is going to _____ standards of service.
18. Air pollution has _____ above an acceptable level.
19. It is difficult to foresee the consequences that may _____ from this action.
20. He _____ the lid of the box to see what was in it.

▪ C O M E ▪

1. come about – happen

Can you tell me how the accident came about?

2. come across – meet/find by chance

When I was in London I came across an old friend of mine.

3. come across as – appear to be, judging from behavior or action

He came across as an honest man

4. come around – regain consciousness

Don't worry, she'll soon come round.

5. come by – drop by, pay casual visit

I thought I'd come by while I was passing

obtain smth usually by effort

Jobs are hard to come by these days

6. come down – collapse

The ceiling came down with a terrible crash.

go from one place to another

My sister is coming down to the city from the countryside.

7. come down with – become ill with a specified illness

I came down with the flu and was unable to go to work.

8. come into – inherit

Michael came into a fortune when his uncle died.

9. come up with – find or produce an answer or solution

Jenny came up with a new idea of increasing sales.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. They recently came _____ from New York to live in the country.

2. The boy came _____ with a brilliant idea for raising money.

3. I was looking through the paper when I came _____ an advertisement for flats.

4. Helen is in bed! She's come _____ with the flu.

5. He came _____ a fortune when his father died.

6. I met him once briefly and he came _____ as a very self-confident man.
7. A little money used to come _____ for him twice a month.
8. How did it come _____ that he knew where we were?
9. Look who's just come _____!
10. How did you come _____ this beautiful necklace?
11. Three of the enemy planes came _____ in the battle.
12. I hope she hasn't come _____ the flu.
13. I hope you can come _____ a better plan than this.
14. He came _____ several thousands when his grandfather died.
15. After she hit her head, it took her several minutes to come _____.

E. R E V I S I O N

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Does she have much teaching _____?
A. spurt B. experience C. evidence D. bundle
2. The government's approach to the problem was _____.
A. haphazard B. spacious C. attracted D. startled
3. He _____ his gold watch to pay the rent.
A. aroused B. flunked C. pawned D. rose
4. His report was full of _____ statements – I couldn't make head or tail of it.
A. spacious B. comprehensible C. old D. odd
5. Dan looked _____ but slightly confused.
A. vast B. evident C. startled D. opposed
6. It's _____ that he is drunk.
A. evident B. enormous C. chaotic D. discrepant
7. He is not exactly a _____ of fun.
A. current B. opening C. bundle D. feature
8. There are always plenty of _____ for bar staff.
A. bundles B. vacancies C. spurts D. torrents
9. He wrote a book that was _____ only to specialists.
A. capable B. contradictory C. adept D. comprehensible

10. The wind kept our ship in _____ until the following afternoon.
 A. forest B. harvest C. harbor D. downtown
11. He was _____ of stealing.
 A. capable B. impressed C. evident D. obvious
12. Birds of prey use air _____ to lift them.
 A. currents B. bundles C. coincidence D. evidence
13. He _____ without even trying.
 A. impressed B. flunked C. attracted D. pawned
14. It was _____ of you to lock the door.
 A. sensible B. sensitive C. wide D. spacious
15. The dog was _____ by the smell of the meat.
 A. opposed B. attracted C. wagered D. contradicted

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

attract	current	experience	transparent
impress	odd	sensible	vacancy
capable	comprehensible	pawn	contradictory
evident	bundle		

- The profession offers a _____ of benefits, not least of which is extensive training.
- They hope to _____ more foreign investors.
- She _____ me with her grasp of the subject.
- It was _____ of her to postpone the trip.
- A fan supplies a _____ of fresh air.
- It must be _____ to all of you that a mistake has been made.
- Our next speaker is a person with long _____ of this problem.
- He handed in a long scarcely _____ report written in official language.
- He is _____ of running a mile in four minutes.
- These companies have a lot of _____ to fill, and they pay well.
- It was _____ that we ran into each other in such a remote corner of the world.
- She was always wearing a _____ silk scarf.
- We received _____ accounts about the success of the military campaign.
- He was ready to _____ his life to save her.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. startling | A. unusual | B. stunning | C. opposing | D. casual |
| 2. contradictory | A. contrary | B. strange | C. adept | D. consistent |
| 3. capable | A. conflicting | B. broad | C. adept | D. vast |
| 4. odd | A. weird | B. vivacious | C. roomy | D. usual |
| 5. spacious | A. bizarre | B. roomy | C. sensible | D. sane |
| 6. transparent | A. gauzy | B. obscure | C. shocking | D. ordinary |
| 7. current | A. bundle | B. opening | C. position | D. spurt |
| 8. comprehensible | A. contrary | B. intelligible | C. vast | D. consistent |
| 9. evident | A. broad | B. random | C. chaotic | D. obvious |
| 10. attract | A. affect | B. effect | C. tempt | D. account |
| 11. sensible | A. sincere | B. reasonable | C. kind | D. generous |
| 12. haphazard | A. obvious | B. gauzy | C. ordinary | D. random |
| 13. flunk | A. understand | B. startle | C. surrender | D. shock |
| 14. impress | A. affect | B. surrender | C. succumb | D. inspire |

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to the boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. attract | A. impress | B. affect | C. tempt | D. repel |
| 2. spacious | A. casual | B. roomy | C. cramped | D. adept |
| 3. transparent | A. weird | B. opaque | C. lucid | D. clear |
| 4. odd | A. bizarre | B. obvious | C. apparent | D. common |
| 5. flunk | A. confront | B. back out | C. consider | D. support |
| 6. merchant | A. bundle | B. flow | C. customer | D. trader |
| 7. contradictory | A. consistent | B. conflicting | C. startling | D. clear |
| 8. sensible | A. sensitive | B. impulsive | C. sane | D. common |
| 9. haphazard | A. random | B. casual | C. hidden | D. orderly |
| 10. evident | A. concealed | B. capacious | C. lucid | D. regular |

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. We said we'd give her the cash, and we must _____ our agreement.
2. Several trees _____ in last night's storm.
3. He has never _____ a trade union.

4. You _____being angry, not just disappointed.
5. It _____ that Sue's husband had been arrested for theft.
6. Have you ever _____such a horrible person in all your life?
7. This book is _____of twelve separate short stories.
8. We don't know yet how we'll solve the problem but I'm sure someone will _____ a solution soon.
9. He _____his hand to take the book.
10. How did you _____this painting? It's a Picasso, you know.
11. She seemed _____at this suggestion.
12. When you're next in town, do_____.
13. Their old orange car _____from all the rest.
14. He didn't mention the word "redundancy" but I knew what he was _____.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. The business has _____ more _____ this year.
2. If we mentioned the incident, she was likely to_____.
3. They acted _____the terms of the contract.
4. Hubble _____that the universe was expanding.
5. Her angry tone of voice _____ me _____.
8. The company _____this year.
9. He can't run very fast _____ his asthma.
10. What was he saying? I could hardly_____.
11. I just_____my_____and ignored him.
12. I'm fed up with _____ all the time. I'm always in debts.
13. Naomi's visit to her old school_____to her fans.
14. Article 47 may only be used_____the international law.
15. He's working for a finance company now, and_____loads of_____.
16. He just _____after his wife died.
17. When I saw Jeffrey dancing, I couldn't_____.
18. She was told to wear flat shoes, _____ her back problem.
19. Use this product only _____ the manufacturer's instructions.
20. When we asked Keith who she was, he just _____ his _____.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *un-*.

____canny	____sane	____capable
____consistent	____comprehensible	____numerable

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. The children seem to be totally _____of working quietly by themselves.
2. His books abound in technical expressions that are _____to some ordinary people.
3. Such behavior is _____with her high-minded principles.
4. Sometimes I think I'm going_____.
5. The resemblance between them is_____.
6. His account of the events was_____.
7. This job is driving me_____.
8. She has an _____ability to be in the right place at the right time.
9. While she was in the hospital, she received _____get-well cards and flowers.
10. It is _____that they were admitted to the program.
11. It was _____of him to risk everything.
12. It's _____that we got here on the same day after traveling for three months.
13. You are _____with yourself.
14. The army was badly equipped, and _____of offering serious resistance.
15. I find it _____that nothing has yet been done about this.
16. Ronald sent her _____love letters but she didn't reply any of them.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We delayed our departure _____ account of the bad weather.
2. _____one occasion he rang me in the middle of the night.
3. What were your first impressions _____ the new headmaster?
4. The building was like a prison _____ appearance.
5. You'll get a better view _____ the pianist if you stand up.

6. I'll buy some bread _____ my way home.
7. He's _____ excellent condition for a man of his age.
8. He's unemployed _____ the moment and has been for over six months.
9. I don't fill like staying late _____ the office.
10. _____ a way I can understand why she wants to move.
11. What do you say _____ a whisky?
12. He has been _____ the music business since 1999.
13. I know _____ experience that he'll arrive late.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We were most impressed _____ the quality of his work.
2. I was introduced _____ a Greek girl at the party.
3. If you want to camp in this field you must ask _____ the farmer's permission.
4. Schools shouldn't be judged only _____ exam results.
5. I'm sure he's capable _____ running a mile in four minutes.
6. I would like to introduce you _____ my friend.
7. Why don't you ask _____ a pay increase?
8. He is capable _____ anything if it furthers his ambition.
9. I was very impressed _____ the efficiency of the staff.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. Sue can't bear _____ (be parted) from her baby daughter.
2. I used to _____ (smoke) but I gave up five years ago.
3. The company simply cannot afford _____ (pay) overtime.
4. The architect suggested _____ (restore) the building.
5. He managed _____ (escape) from prison.
6. Don't hesitate _____ (tell) me if you need any help.
7. They are very willing _____ (give) her the chance she needs.
8. I was not used to _____ (catch) buses; I usually drove everywhere.
9. They seem _____ (know) what they are doing.
10. We can't help _____ (think) he's still alive.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *say* or *tell*.

1. "Come here right now!" the teacher _____ to Tony.
2. Never _____ me a lie again.
3. Can you _____ me the way to the nearest bank?
4. My neighbor always _____ "hello" whenever he sees me.
5. He _____ that he was going home.
6. Mum promised to _____ us a story before we go to bed.
7. She _____ me to meet her at the cinema at 8 o'clock.
8. Richard _____ Sarah that he was having a party on Saturday night.
9. Personally I can't _____ one kind of wine from another.
10. I'm sure she won't be angry if you _____ her the truth.

7. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. Mr. Jones said, "I need to buy a gift for my wife."

2. Father said, "I want you to wash my car for me."

3. "I'll call you tomorrow", she said to Peter.

4. "A giraffe is bigger than a mouse", he explained.

5. "They are working in the garden", said Mary.

6. "He called me while I was having lunch", she said.

7. Jill said, "I saw Jack at the party a few months ago, and he seemed fine".

8. "I may be a little late this evening", she said.

9. He said, "I'll go shopping tomorrow".

10. "In fall leaves on trees turn from green to yellow, red and brown," the teacher said.

8. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. "Can you play the guitar?" he asked her

2. My boss asked me, "Have you finished these reports?"

3. "Why didn't you tell me earlier?" she asked.

4. "Will you be coming back later?" he asked.

5. "How do you get to Northfield?" she asked.

6. "Are meals included in the price, or not?" she wondered.

7. "What do you want?" she asked.

8. "Are you happy with your new job?" Jeanette asked.

9. He asked, "What did you think of the yesterday's performance?"

10. "Have you ever eaten snails?" he wondered.

9. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. *In spite of/Even though* the fact, that the graphics in that new computer game I bought are quite good, I soon got bored with playing it.
2. I understand your point of view. *However/Although* I don't agree with it.
3. He has lived next door to us for years. *Despite/Nevertheless* we hardly ever see him.
5. *Despite/In spite* walking up the stairs cautiously, I nearly fell twice.
6. *Although/Despite* a bad cough, she was able to sing in the choir.
7. *However/Though* I knew the house was empty, I rang the doorbell.
8. This shirt is still dirty, *even though /nevertheless* I've washed it twice.
9. *Although/In spite of* he promised that he wouldn't be late, he didn't arrive until 9 o'clock.
10. *However/In spite of* losing a lot of blood, he is in a stable condition.

10. Join the ideas using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. She is cheerful. She always behaves politely. (*moreover / nevertheless*)

2. They are brothers. They don't look alike. (*like / despite*)

3. She fell over. She didn't hurt herself. (*also / although*)

4. Growing your own vegetables is cheaper than buying them. Home-grown vegetables home-grown vegetables are usually tastier. (*even though/what is more*)

5. Dogs are very useful in police work. They help blind. (*also / although*)

6. He was in pain. He still finished the race. (*however / similarly*)

7. The washing powder is efficient. It's environmentally-friendly. (*as well / though*)

8. The film was long. It was enjoyable. (*what is more / nonetheless*)

9. Exercising helps to keep fit. It can be lots of fun. (*in contrast / furthermore*)

10. Cities are noisy. The countryside is very quiet. (*also / in contrast*)

11. Join the ideas using the word /phrase in brackets.

1. The graphics in my new computer are good. I soon got bored with playing it. (*in spite of*)

2. The substance may not affect humans. The FDA (Food and Drug Administration in the USA) is examining it closely. (*nonetheless*)

3. He promised he wouldn't be late. He didn't arrive until 3 o'clock. (*although*)

4. I understand your point of view. I don't agree with it. (*however*)

5. I knew the house was empty. I rang the doorbell. (*though*)

6. I walked up the stairs cautiously. I nearly fell twice. (*despite*)

7. The car's old. It still runs well. (*although*)

8. He's lost a lot of blood. He's in a stable condition. (*in spite of*)

9. He has lived next door to us for years. We hardly ever see him. (*nevertheless*)

10. This shirt is dirty. I've washed it twice. (*even though*)

11. She had a bad cough. She was able to sing in the choir. (*despite*)

12. The paintings are complex. They have plenty of appeal. (*nonetheless*)

13. She's been promoted twice. She joined the company only a year ago. (*although*)

14. It's my responsibility. I appreciate your offer. (*however*)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

1. What did Edward Burton look like?
2. What kind of business was he in?
3. Why was he popular at the clubs/with bridge players?
4. What sort of person did he seem to be?
5. What did Lenny Burton look like?
6. What was he good at/How did he earn his living?
7. Why did Lenny apply to Edward for help?
8. What did Edward suggest that Lenny do?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

1. What does Somerset Maugham mean, when he writes that "...for the most part we judge the persons we meet on the face"?
2. How did Edward really feel about Lenny?
3. What is the meaning of the title of the story? Does it apply to Edward?
4. Why did Edward turn Lenny down when he asked him for help? Why did he agree later?
5. Was there any danger that Lenny would get drowned?
6. What would have happened, if Lenny had turned up?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list each character qualities /habits. Then give examples of their behavior.

Character	Qualities/Habits	Behavior
1. Edward	rich generous kind	was a merchant was in business in Japan made every penny himself played bridge/played a generous game lost money with a good grace didn't raise voice in anger

	<p>charming</p> <p>harmless</p>	<p>had a benign smile</p> <p>there was nothing mawkish in him</p> <p>had a dry humor</p> <p>could tell a good spicy story</p> <p>was popular at the clubs</p> <p>aroused instincts of protection</p> <p>couldn't bear to hurt a fly</p>
2. Lenny	<p>was good at playing cards</p> <p>wild</p> <p>used to be rich</p> <p>was a loser</p>	<p>had an instinct about cards</p> <p>belonged to some good clubs</p> <p>drank too much</p> <p>won a lot</p> <p>a bit of money came in from home</p> <p>had bad luck at cards</p> <p>went broke</p> <p>pawned everything</p> <p>was down and out</p> <p>was all to pieces</p>

2. Think of some examples of cause-and-effect relationship in this story. Then complete the following chart.

Cause	Effect
1. Edward was small and frail.	1. He aroused instincts of protection.
2. Lenny was handsome.	2. Women thought a lot of him.
3. Lenny was brilliant at playing cards.	3.
4.	4. Edward was rich.
5. Lenny wasn't in good condition.	5.

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss the impression Edward made on people around him. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
2. There is a saying "You can't judge a book by its cover." Does it apply to Edward Burton?
3. Think about what might have happened if Lenny hadn't gone broke?

E. W R I T I N G

1. Imagine you are a reporter and you have been called on the scene of the accident. Interview Edward Burton who was the last to see Lenny.
2. Compare and contrast Edward and Lenny in appearance, social status, character and behavior.
3. Pretend to be Lenny and ask Edward for a favor.
4. Write a short paragraph describing the events in the office.

UNIT 3

A Retrieved Reformation

O'Henry

PART 1

A guard came to the prison shoe-shop, where Jimmy Valentine was assiduously stitching uppers, and escorted him to the front office. There the warden handed Jimmy his pardon, which had been signed that morning by the governor. Jimmy took it in a tired kind of way. He had expected to stay only about three months, at the longest. When a man with as many friends on the outside as Jimmy Valentine had is received in the "stir" it is hardly worth while to cut his hair.

"Now, Valentine," said the warden, "you'll go out in the morning. Brace up, and make a man of yourself. You're not a bad fellow at heart. Stop cracking safes, and live straight."

"Me?" said Jimmy, in surprise. "Why, I never cracked a safe in my life."

"Oh, no," laughed the warden. "Of course, not. Let's see, now. How was it you happened to get sent up on that Springfield job? Was it because you wouldn't prove an alibi for fear of compromising somebody in extremely high-toned society? Or was it simply a case of a mean old jury that had it in for you? It's always one or the other with you innocent victims."

"Me?" said Jimmy, still blankly virtuous. "Why, warden, I never was in Springfield in my life!"

"Take him back, Cronin," smiled the warden, "and fix him up with outgoing clothes. Unlock him at seven in the morning, and let him come to the bull-pen. Better think over my advice, Valentine."

At a quarter past seven on the next morning Jimmy stood in the warden's outer office. He had on a suit of the villainously fitting, ready-made clothes and a pair of the stiff, squeaky shoes that the state furnishes to its discharged compulsory guests.

The clerk handed him a railroad ticket and the five-dollar bill with which the law expected him to rehabilitate himself into good citizenship and prosperity. The warden gave him a cigar, and shook hands. Valentine, 9762, was chronicled on the books "Pardoned by Governor", and Mr. James Valentine walked out into the sunshine.

Disregarding the song of the birds, the waving green trees, and the smell of the flowers, Jimmy headed straight for a restaurant. There he tasted the first sweet joys of liberty in the shape of a broiled chicken and a bottle of white wine – followed by a cigar a grade better than the one the warden had given him. From there he proceeded leisurely to the depot. He tossed a quarter into the hat of a blind man sitting by the door, and boarded his train. Three hours set him down in a little town near the state line. He went to the cafe of one Mike Dolan and shook hands with Mike, who was alone behind the bar.

"Sorry we couldn't make it sooner, Jimmy, my boy," said Mike. "But we had that protest from Springfield to buck against, and the governor nearly balked. Feeling all right?"

"Fine," said Jimmy, "Got my key?"

He got his key and went upstairs, unlocking the door of a room at the rear. Everything was just as he had left it. There on the floor was still Ben Price's collar-button that had been torn from that eminent detective's shirt-band when they had overpowered Jimmy to arrest him.

Pulling out from the wall a folding-bed, Jimmy slid back a panel in the wall and dragged out a dust-covered suit-case. He opened this and gazed fondly at the finest set of burglar's tools in the East. It was a complete set, made of specially tempered steel, the latest designs in drills, punches, braces and bits, jimmies, clamps, and augers, with two or three novelties invented by Jimmy himself, in which he took pride. Over nine hundred dollars they had cost him to have made at a place where they make such things for the profession.

In half an hour Jimmy went downstairs and through the cafe. He was now dressed in tasteful and well-fitting clothes, and carried his dusted and cleaned suit-case in his hand.

"Got anything on?" asked Mike Dolan, genially.

"Me?" said Jimmy, in a puzzled tone. "I don't understand I'm representing the New York Amalgamated Short Snap Biscuit Cracker and Frazzled Wheat Company."

This statement delighted Mike to such an extent that Jimmy had to take a seltzer-and-milk on the spot. He never touched "hard" drinks.

A week after the release of Valentine, 9762, there was a neat job of safe-burglary done in Richmond, Indiana, with no clue to the author. A scant eight hundred dollars was all that was secured. Two weeks after that a patented, improved, burglar-proof safe in Logansport was opened like a cheese to the tune of fifteen hundred dollars, currency; securities and silver untouched. That began to interest the rogue-catchers. Then an old-fashioned bank-safe in Jefferson City became active and threw out of its crater an eruption of bank-notes amounting to five thousand dollars. The losses were now high enough to bring the matter up into Ben Price's class of work. By comparing notes, a remarkable similarity in the methods of the burglaries was noticed. Ben Price investigated the scenes of the robberies, and was heard to remark:

"That's Dandy Jim Valentine's autograph. He's resumed business. Look at that combination knob – jerked out as easy as pulling up a radish in wet weather. He's got the only clamps that can do it. And look how clean those tumblers were punched out! Jimmy never has to drill but one hole. Yes, I guess I want Mr. Valentine. He'll do his bit next time without any short-time or clemency foolishness."

Ben Price knew Jimmy's habits. He had learned them while working up the Springfield case. Long jumps, quick get-aways, no confederates, and a taste for good society – these ways had helped Mr. Valentine to become noted as a successful dodger of retribution. It was given out that Ben Price had taken up the trail of the elusive cracksman, and other people with burglar-proof safes felt more at ease.

PART 2

One afternoon Jimmy Valentine and his suit-case climbed out of the mail-hack in Elmore, a little town five miles off the railroad down in the black-jack country of Arkansas. Jimmy, looking like an athletic young senior just home from college, went down the board sidewalk toward the hotel.

A young lady crossed the street, passed him at the corner and entered a door over which was the sign "The Elmore Bank". Jimmy Valentine looked into her eyes, forgot what he was, and became another man. She lowered her eyes and colored slightly. Young men of Jimmy's style and looks were scarce in Elmore.

Jimmy collared a boy that was loafing on the steps of the bank as if he were one of the stock-holders, and began to ask him questions about the town, feeding him dimes at intervals. By and by the young lady came out, looking royally unconscious of the young man with the suit-case, and went her way.

"Isn't that young lady Miss Polly Simpson?" asked Jimmy, with specious guile.

"No," said the boy. "She's Annabel Adams. Her pa owns this bank. What'd you come to Elmore for? Is that a gold watch-chain? I'm going to get a bulldog. Got any more dimes?"

Jimmy went to the Planters' Hotel, registered as Ralph D. Spencer, and engaged a room. He leaned on the desk and declared his platform to the clerk. He said he had come to Elmore to look for a location to go into business. How was the shoe business, now, in the town? He had thought of the shoe business. Was there an opening?

The clerk was impressed by the clothes and manner of Jimmy. He, himself, was something of a pattern of fashion to the thinly gilded youth of Elmore, but he now perceived his shortcomings. While trying to figure out Jimmy's manner of tying his four-in-hand he cordially gave information.

Yes, there ought to be a good opening in the shoe line. There wasn't an exclusive shoe-store in the place. The dry-goods and general stores handled them. Business in all lines was fairly good. Hoped Mr. Spencer would decide to locate in Elmore. He would find it a pleasant town to live in, and the people very sociable.

Mr. Spencer thought he would stop over in the town a few days and look over the situation. No, the clerk needn't call the boy. He would carry up his suit-case, himself; it was rather heavy.

Mr. Ralph Spencer, the phoenix that arose from Jimmy Valentine's ashes – ashes left by the flame of a sudden and alternative attack of love – remained in Elmore, and prospered. He opened a shoe-store and secured a good run of trade.

Socially he was also a success, and made many friends. And he accomplished the wish of his heart. He met Miss Annabel Adams, and became more and more captivated by her charms.

At the end of a year the situation of Mr. Ralph Spencer was this: he had won the respect of the community, his shoe-store was flourishing, and he and Annabel were engaged to be married in two weeks. Mr. Adams, the typical, plodding, country banker, approved of Spencer. Annabel's pride in him almost equalled her affection. He was as much at home in the family of Mr. Adams and that of Annabel's married sister as if he were already a member.

One day Jimmy sat down in his room and wrote this letter, which he mailed to the safe address of one of his old friends in St. Louis:

DEAR OLD PAL

I want you to be at Sullivan's place, in Little Rock, next Wednesday night, at nine o'clock. I want you to wind up some little matters for me. And, also, I want to make you a present of my kit of tools. I know you'll be glad to get them – you couldn't duplicate the lot for a thousand dollars. Say, Billy, I've quit the old business – a year ago. I've got a nice store. I'm making an honest living, and I'm going to marry the finest girl on earth two weeks from now. It's the only life, Billy – the straight one. I wouldn't touch a dollar of another man's money now for a million. After I get married I'm going to sell out and go West, where there won't be so much danger of having old scores brought up against me. I tell you, Billy, she's an angel. She believes in me; and I wouldn't do another crooked thing for the whole world. Be sure to be at Sully's, for I must see you. I'll bring along the tools with me.

*Your old friend,
JIMMY.*

On the Monday night after Jimmy wrote this letter, Ben Price jogged unobtrusively into Elmore in a livery buggy. He lounged about town in his quiet way

until he found out what he wanted to know. From the drug-store across the street from Spencer's shoe-store he got a good look at Ralph D. Spencer.

"Going to marry the banker's daughter are you, Jimmy?" said Ben to himself, softly. "Well, I don't know!"

The next morning Jimmy took breakfast at the Adamses. He was going to Little Rock that day to order his wedding-suit and buy something nice for Annabel. That would be the first time he had left town since he came to Elmore. It had been more than a year now since those last professional "jobs", and he thought he could safely venture out.

After breakfast quite a family party went down town together – Mr. Adams, Annabel, Jimmy, and Annabel's married sister with her two little girls, aged five and nine. They came by the hotel where Jimmy still boarded, and he ran up to his room and brought along his suitcase. Then they went on to the bank. There stood Jimmy's horse and buggy and Dolph Gibson, who was going to drive him over to the railroad station.

All went inside the high, carved oak railings into the banking-room – Jimmy included, for Mr. Adams's future son-in-law was welcome anywhere. The clerks were pleased to be greeted by the good-looking, agreeable young man who was going to marry Miss Annabel. Jimmy set his suit-case down. Annabel, whose heart was bubbling with happiness and lively youth, put on Jimmy's hat and picked up the suitcase. "Wouldn't I make a nice drummer?" said Annabel. "My! Ralph, how heavy it is. Feels like it was full of gold bricks."

"Lot of nickel-plated shoe-horns in there," said Jimmy, coolly, "that I'm going to return. Thought I'd save express charges by taking them up. I'm getting awfully economical."

The Elmore Bank had just put in a new safe and vault. Mr. Adams was very proud of it, and insisted on an inspection by every one. The vault was a small one, but it had a new patented door. It fastened with three solid steel bolts thrown simultaneously with a single handle, and had a time-lock. Mr. Adams beamingly explained its workings to Mr. Spencer, who showed a courteous but not too intelligent interest. The two children, May and Agatha, were delighted by the shining metal and funny clock and knobs.

While they were thus engaged Ben Price sauntered in and leaned on his elbow, looking casually inside between the railings. He told the teller that he didn't want anything; he was just waiting for a man he knew.

Suddenly there was a scream or two from the women, and a commotion. Unperceived by the elders, May, the nine-year-old girl, in a spirit of play, had shut Agatha in the vault. She had then shot the bolts and turned the knob of the combination as she had seen Mr. Adams do.

The old banker sprang to the handle and tugged at it for a moment. "The door can't be opened," he groaned. "The clock hasn't been wound nor the combination set."

Agatha's mother screamed again, hysterically.

"Hush!" said Mr. Adams, raising his trembling hand. "All be quite for a moment. Agatha!" he called as loudly as he could. "Listen to me." During the following silence they could just hear the faint sound of the child wildly shrieking in the dark vault in a panic of terror.

"My precious darling!" wailed the mother. "She will die of fright! Open the door! Oh, break it open! Can't you men do something?"

"There isn't a man nearer than Little Rock who can open that door," said Mr. Adams, in a shaky voice. "My God! Spencer, what shall we do? That child – she can't stand it long in there. There isn't enough air, and, besides, she'll go into convulsions from fright."

Agatha's mother, frantic now, beat the door of the vault with her hands. Somebody wildly suggested dynamite. Annabel turned to Jimmy, her large eyes full of anguish, but not yet despairing. To a woman nothing seems quite impossible to the powers of the man she worships.

"Can't you do something, Ralph – *try*, won't you?"

He looked at her with a queer, soft smile on his lips and in his keen eyes.

"Annabel," he said, "give me that rose you are wearing, will you?"

Hardly believing that she heard him aright, she unpinned the bud from the bosom of her dress, and placed it in his hand. Jimmy stuffed it into his vest-pocket, threw off his coat and pulled up his shirt-sleeves. With that act Ralph D. Spencer passed away and Jimmy Valentine took his place.

"Get way from the door, all of you," he commanded, shortly.

He set his suit-case on the table, and opened it out flat. From that time on he seemed to be unconscious of the presence of any one else. He laid out the shining, queer implements swiftly and orderly, whistling softly to himself as he always did when at work. In a deep silence and immovable, the others watched him as if under a spell.

In a minute Jimmy's pet drill was biting smoothly into the steel door. In ten minutes – breaking his own burglarious record – he threw back the bolts and opened the door.

Agatha, almost collapsed, but safe, was gathered into her mother's arms.

Jimmy Valentine put on his coat, and walked outside the railings toward the front door. As he went he thought he heard a far-away voice that he once knew call "Ralph!" But he never hesitated.

At the door a big man stood somewhat in his way.

"Hello, Ben!" said Jimmy, still with his strange smile. "Got around at last, have you? Well, let's go. I don't know that it makes much difference, now."

And then Ben Price acted rather strangely.

"Guess you're mistaken, Mr. Spencer," he said. "Don't believe I recognize you. Your buggy's waiting for you, ain't it?"

And Ben Price turned and strolled down the street.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

PART 1

1. **assiduous** – able to work hard; careful to make sure that smth is done properly

An assiduous collector of folk songs

2. **sign** – to write one's name

You forgot to sign a letter.

Both presidents signed the treaty as part of the new peace plan.

3. **crack** – to break, to cause the break

Don't put that delicate china in the dishwasher – it may crack.

4. **alibi** – being in some other place when a crime was committed

I've got an alibi for Monday night.

5. **compromise** – to bring under suspicion by unwise behavior or speech;

This politician compromised himself by taking bribes.

6. **mean** – unkind or even cruel;

That's a mean dog. Be careful it doesn't bite you.

– stingy

He's always been mean with his money.

7. **innocent** – free from sin, guilt or wrongdoing

Criminal lawyer claimed that his client is innocent of any wrongdoing.

– foolishly simple

He is so innocent; anyone can take advantage of him.

8. **virtuous** – morally good; righteous

She always tried to lead a virtuous life.

9. **discharge** – to set free, allow to leave

Some prisoners were discharged from the jail.

10. **prosperity** – success; good fortune, wealth, flourishing conditions

It was the time of economic prosperity.

prosper – to be successful, esp. financially

The business is prospering.

- 11. disregard** – to pay no attention to; to take no notice or account of
He disregarded my warnings and met with an accident.
- 12. proceed to (formal)** – to go forward; to make one's way
Passengers for flight 406 should proceed to gate 32.
- 13. board** – to get on or into a ship, train
She boarded the wrong train.
 – to live at another person's house in a room that you pay for
She had three students she boarded a room with.
- 14. balk** – to not want to or refuse to do smth that is difficult, or frightening
Perry seemed interested, but balked when he heard the price.
- 15. eminent** – important, respected, and admired
He is one of Britain's most eminent scientists.
- 16. gaze at** – to look at someone or smth for a long time
The climbers stood on top of the mountain, gazing at the splendid view.
He spends hours gazing out of the window when he should be working.
- 17. well-fitting (clothes)** – clothes which are the right size and shape for someone
He was dressed neatly enough in a well-fitting blue coat but was barefoot.
- 18. be puzzled** – to be confused and unable to understand smth
Carrie is still slightly puzzled as to why he never called her.
puzzle – to confuse someone
This question puzzles me.
puzzle over – to think for a long time about smth because you can't solve it
After hours of puzzling over the book it suddenly made sense.
- 19. delight** – to please, to charm, to get much enjoyment from
This book will delight any reader.
be delighted – to be glad
The whole family is delighted with the new house.
- 20. release** – the act of letting someone leave a place such as a prison or hospital
The events led to the release of the Western hostages
release – to let someone go free after having kept them somewhere
You can be released from prison early, for good behavior.
- 21. trail** – many pieces of connected evidence that prove someone did smth illegal
The trail of missing funds led investigators directly to Wang.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. stingy, selfish, disgusting, unkind, nasty _____
2. stare, look, glance, watch _____
3. confuse, baffle, bewilder _____
4. ignore, neglect, overlook _____
5. succeed, flourish, develop, progress _____
6. smash, split, shatter, flaw _____
7. satisfy, charm, entertain, gratify _____
8. pure, blameless, unstained _____
9. unload, relieve, release, dismiss _____
10. important, notable _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. I dropped a plate and _____ it.
A. cracked B. puzzled C. glanced D. unloaded
2. Some prisoners were _____ from the jail.
A. discharged B. disregarded C. developed D. compromised
3. Her reply _____ me deeply.
A. gazed B. puzzled C. neglected D. owned
4. The commission consisted of fifteen _____ political figures.
A. sensitive B. mean C. pure D. eminent
5. It was a totally _____ kind of mistake – you not to blame.
A. selfish B. sincere C. innocent D. notable
6. The business is _____.
A. prospering B. proceeding C. disregarding D. staring
7. She was too _____ to put the heating on.
A. mean B. innocent C. moody D. reliable
8. We cannot _____ his coming late so often. Something must be done.
A. dismiss B. delight C. disregard D. flourish
9. His style _____ the reader, that's why his books are so popular.
A. ignores B. delights C. cracks D. releases
10. He _____ out of the window at the sunset.
A. prospered B. confused C. charmed D. gazed

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

crack	prosper	mean	discharge	eminent
innocent	delight	disregard	gaze	puzzle

1. She _____ several ribs and broke her arm skiing.
2. Don't be so _____ to your sister.
3. She was completely _____ of any crime.
4. He _____ my warning and met with an accident.
5. They _____ into each others eyes.
6. This book will _____ any reader.
7. She has been _____ over this problem for weeks.
8. The authorities have recently _____ two political criminals.
9. India's software companies have _____ by keeping costs to a bare minimum.
10. He is one of Britain's most _____ scientists.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. innocent | A. blameless | B. notable | C. selfish | D. guilty |
| 2. mean | A. kind | B. important | C. stingy | D. prosperous |
| 3. gaze | A. overlook | B. stare | C. dismiss | D. proceed |
| 4. delight | A. please | B. upset | C. baffle | D. disgust |
| 5. discharge | A. ignore | B. arrest | C. split | D. dismiss |
| 6. puzzle | A. confuse | B. understand | C. succeed | D. relieve |
| 7. eminent | A. disgusting | B. notable | C. common | D. unstained |
| 8. crack | A. progress | B. watch | C. smash | D. gratify |
| 9. prosper | A. fail | B. bewilder | C. flourish | D. glance |
| 10. disregard | A. notice | B. unload | C. shatter | D. ignore |

PART 2

- 1. scarce** – not available in necessary amounts, or rare

After the war, food and clothing were scarce.

Cheap, clean hotel rooms are scarce in this city, especially in the summer.

- 2. a stock-holder** (esp. AmE) – someone who owns stocks (shares) in a business

Rumors about the company president's illness caused the panic among the stockholders.

- 3. dime** – in the US and Canada, a coin worth ten cents

- How many dimes in a dollar? - Ten.

Quarters, nickels, dimes, the whole works.

- 4. own** – to possess; to have smth when it's legally yours

I don't even own a car

- 5. register** – to write one's name in a register, esp. in a hotel

How many people have registered in this hotel?

register for – sign up for courses

I've registered for carpentry course recently.

- 6. engage** – to attract someone and keep their interest

The new toy didn't engage the child's interest for long.

– to arrange to employ someone

His father engaged a private tutor to improve his English.

– to book a room in a hotel, a ticket (in advance)

be engaged – to promise to marry

Bill is engaged to Betty.

- 7. an opening** – a beginning (*the opening of speech*)

In India we often saw the opening-up of a market, one of the most picturesque views.

– a favorable chance or opportunity

I waited for an opening I give my opinion.

– a special ceremony for smth happening or being used for the first time

In the middle of the 1970s we held gallery openings at breakfast-time in order to get the light.

– a job that is available

I was wondering if there were any openings at your company.

There are two openings at the university for financial aid counselors.

8. a shortcoming – a fault, a failure to reach a required standard

In spite of all her shortcomings, she's still the best actress on this movie set.

The inspector found out some serious shortcomings in our safety system.

9. cordially – warmly, friendly

You are cordially invited to our wedding on May 9.

cordial – friendly or pleasant

The talks were conducted in a cordial atmosphere.

10. handle – to manage, to control to deal with (*to handle finance*)

She couldn't handle the pressures of her new job.

11. secure (a good run of trade) – to obtain smth, sometimes with difficulty

UN negotiators are still trying to secure the release of the hostages.

12. quit – to leave a place, job etc.

If I don't get a pay I'll quit.

13. crooked (*informal*) – dishonest, illegal (*a crooked business / deal*)

A crooked politician was arrested for taking bribes.

14. agreeable – charming, pleasant, nice

An agreeable young man

15. insist on / upon – to urge or command in a forcible or emphatic manner

I'm afraid I've to insist on the return of my book at once.

insist on doing smth – to keep doing smth esp. smth that is annoying

She will insist on washing her hair just when I want to have a bath.

16. commotion – a sudden, brief period of noise, confusion, or excited movement

There was a commotion outside the embassy.

17. precious – valuable and important; rare and worth a lot of money

The doll is very precious to me because it was my mother's.

18. collapse – to become unconscious because you are sick or injured

She collapsed this morning at a health club.

– if smth. collapses, it suddenly becomes too weak to continue

The U.S. auto industry nearly collapsed because of increased foreign competition.

19. stroll (**along / around / down/**) – to walk somewhere in a slow relaxed way

We strolled around the park for an hour or so.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. illegal, dishonest, tricky _____
2. blemish, drawback, fault _____
3. obtain, get, gain, earn _____
4. walk, wander, stray _____
5. fall, fail, faint _____
6. friendly, cordial, benevolent _____
7. stop, cease, give up _____
8. manage, control, deal with, supervise _____
9. friendly, polite, sincere, warm _____
10. demand, persist, urge, press _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. I _____ smoking ten years ago.
A. quit B. handled C. gained D. urged
2. The inspector found out some serious _____ in our safety system.
A. shortcomings B. strolls C. faints D. demands
3. The enterprise _____ through the lack of support.
A. obtains B. insists C. controls D. collapses
4. Most criminals caught and brought to justice will swear the cops were _____.
A. agreeable B. crooked C. cordial D. innocent
5. He managed to _____ a loan from the bank.
A. cease B. fail C. secure D. stroll
6. She has a (an) _____ personality that's why people fall for her immediately.
A. agreeable B. crooked C. blemish D. prosperous
7. We _____ along the deserted beach admiring the sunset.
A. insisted B. gained C. strolled D. secured
8. Greg still _____ that he did nothing wrong.
A. insists B. handles C. falls D. obtains
9. During the whole year labour relations remained _____ and smooth.
A. eminent B. illegal C. faulty D. cordial
10. Working as an accountant, Mr. Brown has to _____ company's funds.
A. prosper B. handle C. stray D. collapse

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

cordial	stroll	secure	shortcoming	handle
quit	collapse	agreeable	crooked	insist

1. The roof _____ under the weight of snow.
2. I'm afraid I have to _____ on the return of my book at once.
3. Whatever his _____ as a money-maker, he was a good father.
4. Inspector Dawkin will _____ this case.
5. I _____ along the river when I saw an incredible thing.
6. His decision _____ international football has shocked everyone.
7. Most Americans agreed with the statement that "quite a few officials are _____."
8. He greeted us with _____ smile.
9. Mr. Shiller _____ funds for the special education project.
10. I found him most _____ to work with, especially when I had my own ideas.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. quit | A. give up | B. start | C. smash | D. press |
| 2. secure | A. lose | B. obtain | C. fail | D. supervise |
| 3. shortcoming | A. drawback | B. trick | C. puzzle | D. value |
| 4. collapse | A. wander | B. stop | C. fail | D. earn |
| 5. cordial | A. illegal | B. blemish | C. friendly | D. innocent |
| 6. crooked | A. benevolent | B. sincere | C. disgusting | D. illegal |
| 7. stroll | A. demand | B. stray | C. stay | D. manage |
| 8. handle | A. control | B. earn | C. fail | D. neglect |
| 9. insist | A. give up | B. persist | C. gain | D. deal with |
| 10. agreeable | A. dishonest | B. pure | C. gloomy | D. cordial |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

PART 1

1. brace up – support, give strength

A walk in this good mountain air will brace you up.

Brace up! Your troubles will soon be over.

2. send up (AmE) – to sentence to prison

The judge sent the man up.

3. fix smb up with smth – to provide with, arrange for sb to have smth

Can you fix me up with a bed for the night?

4. head for – to go in the direction of

We left early in the morning and headed for Niagara Falls.

5. set someone down – to stop a bus or other vehicle and let someone get off

The bus driver set her down at the corner.

6. pull out – to remove

Swimming against the current he was able to pull the child out.

7. drag out – to take smth heavy out of smth

It's so annoying having to drag out the sewing machine every time I want to make a dress.

8. jerk out – to pull smth suddenly and roughly

Mary put her hand on Jim's but he was still angry with her and jerked his hand out.

– to say smth quickly and nervously

I jerked out some stupid remark.

9. work up – to excite, to develop

I can't work up any interest in this book.

10. get away – to get free, become free from being held or controlled, escape

The bank robbers used a stolen car to get away.

getaway – an escape, especially after you have done something illegal

The bank robber made his getaway in a red truck.

11. give out – to make known, to let it be known

Mary gave out that she and Tom were going to get married.

12. take up – to begin to do or learn

He took up carpenter's trade as a boy.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. head for | a. go in the direction |
| 2. work up | b. provide with, arrange for sb to have smth |
| 3. pull out | c. begin to do or learn |
| 4. send up | d. sentence to prison |
| 5. take up | e. make known, let it be known |
| 6. give out | f. remove |
| 7. fix smb. up with smth. | g. stop a vehicle and let sm. get off |
| 8. set smb. down | h. stir up, develop, excite |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. The passenger asked to let him get off the bus at the church.
2. I know someone who can provide you with a good used car.
3. We left early in the morning and went in the direction of Niagara Falls.
4. The date of the election will be made known soon.
5. He was sentenced to 10 years in prison.
6. I'd like you to develop the next set of guidelines.
7. When I got back to the kitchen, the baby had moved everything out of the cupboard.
8. He recently began to learn gardening.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I've _____ yoga recently, it's changed my life.
2. Ask your brother to _____ you _____ a nice girl.
3. His finger was stuck in the bottle and he couldn't _____ it _____.
4. I can't _____ any enthusiasm for this plan.
5. It looks as if the firm is heading _____ another record year!
6. Gary Cooper, a policeman, was the one who _____ that man.
7. It was _____ that the government and the union had reached agreement.
8. The bus driver _____ the two men _____ on a lonely part of the road miles from the farm where they were to work.

PART 2

1. **go into** – to enter as a job or profession

Vivian wants to go into politics.

2. **figure out** – to find an answer by thinking about (some problem or difficulty)

No one can figure out how the fire started.

– to learn how to explain, to understand

Laurence is an odd boy, I can't figure him out.

3. **stop over** – to stay at a place overnight or for some other short time while on a trip

The plane stops over at Grand Falls on its way to Newtown.

4. **look over** – to examine, to inspect smth. in order to assess its quality

We must look over the house before we decide to rent it.

5. **wind up** – to stop running a business, company; to finish

Can you think of a good joke to wind up my speech?

6. **sell out** – to be all sold and there are none left

Have you sold out all the tickets yet?

7. **find out** – to get some information, to learn, to discover

Can you find out what time the meeting starts?

8. **put in** – to install

We had a new water heater put in last week, now we'll have to put in some new window glass.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. put in | a. get some information, to learn |
| 2. sell out | b. understand, find an answer |
| 3. find out | c. to be all sold |
| 4. wind up | d. stop at a place |
| 5. stop over | e. inspect, examine |
| 6. go into | f. install |
| 7. figure out | g. enter as a job or profession |
| 8. look over | h. finish, stop running business |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. Tom couldn't find an answer to the last problem on arithmetic test.
2. Can you think of a good joke to finish my speech?
3. The teacher was angry when he discovered that the students had been cheating.
4. Because of the snowstorm, we couldn't get home last night, and had to stay in a hotel.
5. We examined the house before we decided to rent it.
6. Bill wants to enter law when he gets out of school.
7. They're installing Paul's new stove next week.
8. All the dates on Streisand's concert tour are none left.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. We _____ the T-shirts in the first couple of hours.
2. I can't _____ what he is trying to say.
3. When we came back from California, we _____ one night near the Grand.
4. How do we _____ where to catch the right bus?
5. I hear their son has _____ business.
6. I wonder if you could _____ my book before I send it to the printer's?
7. If we all agree, let's _____ our discussion.
8. How much does it cost to _____ central heating?

C. I d i o m s

1. **at heart** – in spite of appearance, at bottom, in reality

His manners are rough but he is a kind man at heart.

2. **for fear of smth** – because of fear

He left an hour early for fear of missing his train.

for fear (that) – because you are worried that you will make something happen

She would not give her name, for fear that her abusive husband would find her.

3. make things – to produce something by working or doing something

Did you make that dress yourself?

4. on the spot – at that exact time and at the same time or place; without waiting

The news of important events is often broadcast on the spot over television

in a spot – in a difficult situation

You've put us in a spot by telling them that.

be on the spot – to be in the place where smth is happening

As a man on the spot, Michael was in a position to take vital decisions.

5. do one's bit (*informal, BrE*) – to do one's share of the work that needs to be done

I don't mind doing my bit, but I'm not organizing the whole thing on my own.

6. have a taste for something – preference or liking

He has a taste for French cuisine.

7. at ease – in comfort, without pain or bother

You can't feel at ease with a toothache.

8. gilded youth – rich young people living a life of pleasure

...there were failures among the gilded youth (C.P.Snow).

9. be a success – to achieve a desired aim or fame, wealth or social position

He wasn't a success as a teacher.

10. make friends – to meet someone and become friendly with them:

A little boy came over and tried to make friends with Tommy.

11. make a (an honest) living – to get money in a legal way

Betty makes a living growing organic vegetables.

12. be / fall under smb's spell – to be influenced and completely controlled by smb.

Even Frank had fallen under her spell.

13. in one's way – it prevents smth. from happening or someone from moving

Work often gets in the way of my social life.

14. make a difference (to) – to have an important effect on smth, esp. a good effect

Working together, we can make a difference

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

on the spot	taste for	feel at ease	for fear of
at heart	in the way	be a great success	

1. He seems friendly, but he is just a ruthless businessman _____.
2. He was caught stealing and dismissed _____.
3. Even at a young age he had _____ books.
4. He didn't feel completely _____ in the strange surroundings.
5. I didn't tell Susan about our meeting _____ upsetting her.
6. Hal _____ as a rock singer.
7. It's a small street, and he parked right _____.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. Let me tell you, not having a two-hour commute _____ a difference.
2. A week in the countryside will _____ you good.
3. I'm going to show you how to _____ a box for your tools.
4. It was very difficult for former robber to get used to _____ an honest living.
5. What do you _____ for a living?
6. It's pleasant to _____ business with you.
7. I can't _____ a decision just yet.
8. We can finish this job on time if everyone _____ their bit.
9. Carol is _____ carrot cake for dessert.
10. Did you _____ any new friends at school today?
11. Red doesn't _____ a thing for her.
12. He's _____ a fortune selling computers on the Internet.

D. WORD STUDY

SHOUT ▪ SCREAM ▪ GROAN ▪ SQUEAL ▪ HOWL ▪ YELL

1. **shout** – to say something in a loud voice

He was one of those speakers who shout into the microphone.

"If anyone's up there," he shouted sternly, "come out now!"

2. **scream** – to make a loud high cry because you are hurt, frightened, or excited

She opened her mouth to scream.

Some people still trapped in the wreckage screamed for help.

3. **groan** – to make a long low sound, for example because you are in pain or unhappy.

The other people in the queue were moaning and groaning.

4. **squeal** – to make a long high sound

I could hear the girls squealing with delight

5. **howl** – to cry very loudly in pain, anger, or sadness

The children all started howling.

6. **yell** – to make a loud noise because you are angry, afraid, excited, or in pain

'Watch out!' Victor yelled.

'Help me!' she yelled hysterically.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. There was a loud bang, and people started _____.
2. You don't need _____. I'm standing right here.
3. Tim counted to three, then _____ "Go!"
4. Dave _____ in pain as Ranzell beat him.
5. The children _____ with delight as he gave them each a gift.
6. Everyone _____ as Scott began to tell another one of his stupid jokes.
7. The truck _____ to a stop.
8. If you need me, just _____.
9. Richard's jokes make you _____ rather than laugh.
10. Someone was _____ at a horse, asking it to move off his foot.
11. Strong winds _____ across the region.

12. As she kissed him, Gary _____ with pleasure.
13. They drove off, tyres _____.
14. The children _____ in delight as they sledded down the hill.
15. He makes audiences _____ with laughter.
16. He could hear Pete _____ at the top of his voice.
17. She lay in the street, _____ with pain.

▪ **LOOK** ▪ **STARE** ▪ **GLANCE** ▪ **GLIMPSE** ▪ **WATCH** ▪ **GAZE**

1. look – to look in a particular direction

Look! The baby is trying to walk by herself!

Why are you looking at me like that?

2. stare – to look at something or someone for a long time without moving your eyes, for example because you are surprised, angry, or bored

As the fire destroyed the house we just stood and stared in disbelief.

She stared at the page for several minutes, trying to understand.

3. gaze – to look at someone or something for a long time, giving it all your attention, often without realizing you are doing so

He sat for hours gazing out of the kitchen window.

She sat gazing out the windows at the people walking by.

4. glance – to quickly look at someone or something

During the meal he kept glancing at the door, obviously expecting someone to walk in.

I saw them glance at each other as they knew something I didn't.

5. watch – to look at someone or something for a period of time, paying attention to what is happening

We sat and watched the sunset.

Do you want to join in or just sit and watch?

6. glimpse – to see someone or something for a moment without getting a complete view of them

I glimpsed a figure at the window.

She glimpsed them as they passed the tavern.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. If you _____ closely, you can see ducks at the edge of the lake.
2. Don't _____ at people, it's very rude.
3. Tina _____ steadily at the singer, unable to believe she was so close to him.
4. Gary _____ over his shoulder to see if anyone was following.
5. Don't let children play near water without an adult _____ them.
6. She _____ the man with interest as he made his way through the crowd.
7. They lay down and _____ at the clouds passing overhead.
8. Zach _____ at him in disbelief.
9. She _____ around the room to see who was there.

▪ TAKE ▪

1. **take after smb** — to be similar to in character

He takes after his father; he's very friendly and outgoing.

2. **take (sb/sth) apart** — to separate something into pieces

He had to take the whole engine apart before he found the problem.

3. **take (smth) down** — to write, make a note of

Sharon, could you take down the following letter for Brian Stevens at CBC?

4. **take (smb) in** — to make someone believe smth which is not true.

You have to be pretty dumb to be taken in by an offer like that.

to completely understand (the meaning or importance of smth)

I had to read the letter twice before I could take it all in.

5. **take off** — to leave the ground and begin to fly

The plane didn't take off on time, it was delayed five hours.

suddenly to increase, to do well

Interest in environment has taken off in the last couple of years and I don't really understand why.

to suddenly start being successful

Mimi became jealous when Jack's career started taking off.

take something off – to have a holiday from work on a particular day, or for a particular length of time

You should take a few days off work; you do not look well at all.

to remove a piece of clothing

He sat on the bed to take his boots off.

6. take (someone) on – to employ

I'm thinking of taking another secretary on. Do you know anybody suitable?

7. take (smth) over – to take control

He is very dominating. When he joins a discussion, he usually takes over and no one else has a chance to say anything.

8. take (smb) out – to take someone to a restaurant, theater, etc. and pay for their meal or entertainment

I'm taking Melinda out for dinner tonight.

9. take (smth) up – to start a new hobby.

I've taken up yoga recently. It's changed my life.

to occupy

This sofa takes up too much room in here. We should move it downstairs.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. I needed a minute to take _____ what Carter had told me.
2. When he told her he had come to check the gas meter, she was completely taken _____.
3. Your daughter doesn't take _____ you at all.
4. The plane took _____ an hour late.
5. I won't take _____ any more of your time.
6. They have taken _____ golf.
7. Sony has taken _____ CBS Records.
8. She was taken _____ as a new trainee.
9. We're often on duty even at weekends and it's difficult to take time _____ work.
10. Reporters took _____ every word of his speech.
11. Her singing career took _____ after her TV appearance.

12. I'm not sure how much of his explanation she took _____.
13. Do you think the teacher was taken _____ by your excuse?
14. I like to take things _____ to see how they work.
15. I'd like to take you _____ to a meal on your birthday to give you a holiday from cooking.
16. Larger companies are taking _____ smaller firms by buying their shares.
17. We had to take the whole engine _____ to discover the cause of the trouble.
18. Go to the meeting and take _____ everything that the chairman says.
19. I'd like to take next Monday _____ to visit my sister in the hospital.
20. It can take _____ the whole afternoon to prepare a meal.

E. R E V I S I O N

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. You forgot to _____ the letter.
A. puzzle B. sign C. stroll D. insist
2. He is so _____, anyone can take advantage of him.
A. crooked B. mean C. eminent D. innocent
3. Baker was _____ after the evidence against him was found to be flawed.
A. discharged B. delighted C. disregarded D. handled
4. Don't put that delicate china in the dishwasher – it may _____.
A. quit B. crack C. stroll D. press
5. I've always wanted to _____ a little cabin in the woods.
A. own B. charm C. cease D. gaze
6. He's always been _____ with his money.
A. friendly B. blameless C. shortcoming D. mean
7. This politician _____ himself by taking bribes.
A. collapsed B. compromised C. secured D. controlled

8. How many people have _____ in this hotel?
A. resigned B. insisted C. registered D. flourished
9. You can be _____ from prison early for good behavior.
A. released B. overlooked C. stared D. crooked
10. It _____ me why she said this.
A. quits B. puzzles C. collapses D. prospers
11. A good radio script should be able to _____ the listener.
A. relieve B. engage C. crack D. obtain
12. You'll receive specific training on how to _____ angry customers.
A. secure B. stroll C. handle D. gaze
13. My mother's old ring is my most _____ possession.
A. assiduous B. cordial C. mean D. precious
14. Talks between management and unions have _____.
A. collapsed B. baffled C. delighted D. discharged
15. We could _____ into the town if you like.
A. cease B. obtain C. stroll D. faint
16. He _____ widespread support among the party's members.
A. strayed B. released C. secured D. disregarded
17. In spite of all her _____ she's still the best actress on this movie set.
A. commotions B. shortcomings C. alibis D. openings
18. The government was criticized for the way it _____ the crisis.
A. stared B. failed C. handled D. insisted
19. If I don't get a pay I'll _____.
A. prosper B. quit C. crack D. wander
20. She _____ that she was innocent.
A. succeeded B. disregarded C. insisted D. engaged

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

resume	own	discharge	delight	disregard	register
prosper	gaze	proceed	insist	engage	handle
impress	crack	release	puzzle	collapse	shortcomings

1. Dad fell and _____ his head against the door.
2. We _____ in wonder at the scene before us.
3. We _____ over what it meant.
4. Government official talks will _____ in spring.
5. He was taken to the hospital but _____ after a check up.
6. They _____ safety procedures and that's why the accident happened.
7. The Australian team will _____ to the quarter finals.
8. The new toy didn't _____ the child's interest for long.
9. She is fully aware of her _____.
10. Her singing _____ everyone.
11. The child was taken to hospital but was later _____.
12. Have you _____ for the English exam yet?
13. What _____ me was their ability to deal with any problem.
14. He was killed when a piece of the wall (collapsed) _____ on him.
15. She _____ that we stay at her house instead of a hotel.
16. Before she died, she had given away nearly everything she _____.
17. You'll receive specific training on hoe _____ angry customers.
18. Over the next few years, our little bar _____ grew in popularity.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. quit | A. cease | B. start | C. blemish | D. faint |
| 2. eminent | A. nasty | B. notable | C. unstained | D. innocent |
| 3. prosper | A. release | B. control | C. press | D. flourish |
| 4. insist | A. urge | B. glance | C. secure | D. stop |

5. discharge	A. dismiss	B. resume	C. neglect	D. develop
6. puzzle	A. baffle	B. obtain	C. charm	D. split
7. gaze	A. walk	B. ignore	C. stare	D. sign
8. stroll	A. stay	B. earn	C. stray	D. urge
9. innocent	A. guilty	B. pure	C. polite	D. selfish
10. crooked	A. straight	B. important	C. precious	D. dishonest
11. collapse	A. fail	B. succeed	C. shatter	D. charm
12. agreeable	A. nasty	B. notable	C. cordial	D. well-fitting
13. handle	A. rule	B. supervise	C. flaw	D. demand
14. secure	A. achieve	B. obtain	C. entertain	D. bewilder
15. delight	A. flourish	B. manage	C. gratify	D. irritate
16. mean	A. nice	B. blameless	C. tricky	D. stingy
17. disregard	A. overlook	B. include	C. persist	D. relieve

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to the boldfaces word.

1. discharge	A. release	B. arrest	C. supervise	D. fall
2. crooked	A. confusing	B. unkind	C. honest	D. tricky
3. prosper	A. develop	B. fail	C. earn	D. stop
4 shortcoming	A. merit	B. drawback	C. trail	D. feature
5. secure	A. obtain	B. press	C. dismiss	D. lose
6. innocent	A. guilty	B. blameless	C. stingy	D. delightful
7. resume	A. re-start	B. ignore	C. stroll	D. quit
8. mean	A. creative	B. reserved	C. generous	D. nasty
9. delight	A. promise	B. disappoint	C. disregard	D. charm
10. quit	A. start	B. crack	C. fail	D. give up

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I've _____ your suggestion and decided not to accept it.
2. He couldn't _____ what the teacher was talking about.
3. I'll _____ you _____ a place to live.
4. Passengers may be _____ and picked up only at the official stops.
5. Let's see if we can _____ this _____ by 7.
6. We must _____ the house before we decide to rent it.
7. We may never _____ the truth about what happened.
8. I went to get some bread, but the shop had _____.
9. I wanted _____ in India on the way to Australia.
10. They _____ on the radio that the president had died.
11. Alex has decided _____ nursing.
12. They _____ a burglar alarm when they moved in.
13. The ship _____ Manchester when the storm broke out.
14. Does this toy take apart so that the children can _____ how it works?
15. Writing in another language demands so much effort that it _____ all my attention.
16. Can you _____ this letter _____ before I send it?
17. I could hear them talking but I couldn't _____ what they were saying.
18. Don't mention the letter to her, I don't want her _____ any false hopes.
19. I needed a minute _____ what Carter had told me.
20. I was _____ by his appearance.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. She hopes to _____ from writing children's books.
2. All people everywhere must _____ to help get things under control.
3. After college, Corinne fell _____ of the cult's leader.
4. The Americans did not have troops _____ and could not control events.
5. I guess I'm just a kid _____.
6. If you have _____ adventure, a rafting trip through the Grand Canyon will satisfy you.
7. Mr. Pratt uses games to make the new students feel _____.
8. Hal was not _____ as a rock singer.
9. This scheme will certainly _____ to the way I do my job.
10. I tried to go into the parking lot, but there was a big dump truck _____.
11. She finally ran away _____ that he would kill her.
12. Jenny has always found it easy _____ at school.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *un-*, *dis-*.

_____ kind	_____ pleasant	_____ agreeable
_____ complete	_____ sociable	_____ economical
_____ successful	_____ honest	_____ possible
_____ conscious	_____ safe	_____ professional

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. He made a(n) _____ remark about his ex-wife.
2. The fall from his horse knocked him _____ for several minutes.
3. The bridge is closed because it's _____.
4. The drinking water had a(n) _____ oily taste.
5. My new roommate is moody and _____.
6. He's been _____ with us, and I'll never trust him again.
7. The polls have closed but the results of the election are still _____.
8. After writing three _____ plays, Miller finally had a hit.
9. Dressing like that was very _____ of him.
10. He is _____ to everyone.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. The birthday cake for Luis was _____ the shape of a heart.
2. His expressionless face gave her no clue _____ what he was thinking.
3. We plan to be away for a week, _____ the longest.
4. _____ the end, she chose to go to Oberlin College.
5. _____ the end of the concert, there was great applause.
6. The woman at the desk greeted him _____ a bored voice.
7. All the craftsmen take great pride _____ their work.
8. I nearly died _____ fright when I heard his voice behind me.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. She will insist _____ washing her hair just when I want to have a bath.
2. The climbers stood at the top of the mountain, gazing _____ the splendid view.
3. She was very impressed _____ one of the male dancers.
4. He seemed to approve _____ my choice.
5. We are so proud _____ her for telling the truth.
6. I believe _____ giving a person a second chance.
7. The whole family is delighted _____ the new house.
8. An envelope was waiting _____ me when I got home.
9. She is dying _____ cancer.
10. He was suddenly conscious _____ everyone looking at him.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. I didn't really expect you _____ (understand).
2. I suggest _____ (hold) another meeting next week.
3. He finished _____ (talk) and sat down.
4. It was late, so we decided _____ (take) a taxi home.
5. How old were you when you learned _____ (drive)?
6. The book is definitely worth _____ (read).
7. My mother never hesitates _____ (tell) me when I look bad.
8. Avoiding fatty foods and salt can help _____ (bring) down your blood pressure.
9. He's considering _____ (buy) a used car.
10. I'm delighted _____ (meet) you.
11. They run too fast for me _____ (catch up) with them.
12. We are old enough _____ (vote).
13. I didn't know how _____ (break) the news to her.
14. She tried _____ (open) the door but it wouldn't.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *say* or *tell*.

1. "Could you _____ me the time?" _____ the old lady.
2. He _____ me to speak up because he couldn't hear me.
3. Mr. Lawson _____ he could speak French and Arabic.
4. I don't trust Bob anymore, He is always _____ lies.
5. She _____ us not to _____ anything to her family.
6. The judge _____ the witness to _____ the truth and nothing but the truth.
7. "_____ your prayers and go to bed", Mum _____.
8. Everybody wanted to _____ a few words about the concert.

7. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. "I'm sorry I broke your glasses," Tom said.

2. "I haven't spoken to Mary since last week," Gloria said.

3. "They delivered the letters this morning," she said.

4. "You must leave early tomorrow," she said.

5. "I can meet you on Tuesday," he said.

6. "He's playing in the garden now," his mother said.

7. "We may visit Joe tonight," they said.

8. "We've been invited to a wedding," she said to him.

9. "I'll go to the bank tomorrow," Jill said.

10. "Seaweed grows in the sea," the teacher said to the students.

8. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. "Who was at the party last night?" Cindy asked me.

2. "Are you going to the cinema tomorrow?" his mother asked him.

3. "When will the package be delivered?" she asked us.

4. "Where is the building?" he asked me.

5. "Where is the tourist information centre?" we asked.

6. "Will you take children to school today?" he asked.

7. "Have you been to the British Museum?" they asked.

9. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. Everything had been prepared *by the time* / *until* the guests arrived.

2. *After* / *As* I was waiting for the bus it started to rain.

3. *While* / *As soon as* she was teaching the lesson the lights went out.

4. Janet was just about to start reading her book *when* / *until* the man picked up his briefcase and started moving towards the front of the plane.

5. Sam got married last year. His brother had got married two years *ago* / *before*.

6. He was singing a song *while* / *after* he was walking.

7. The thieves had escaped *by* / *by the time* the police arrived.

8. Sharon waited in the car *as soon as* / *while* Sam was filling the petrol tank.

9. *The moment* / *Before* she closed her eyes she fell asleep.

10. *Before* / *As* I was going into the building a man carrying a large television set stopped me.

10. Join the ideas using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. We saw the smoke. We turned into our street. (*the moment / in addition*)

2. We got back to our spot. Our things had been stolen. (*by the time / furthermore*)

3. I was washing my hair. The telephone rang.. (*though / while*)

4. Sue reached the bank. It had closed. (*however / by the time*)

5. He put on his coat. He went out. (*then / nevertheless*)

6. I like Martin. He can be annoying at time. (*as soon as / however*)

7. Susie is very beautiful. She is extremely intelligent. (*what is more / by that time*)

8. Mark missed the bus. He got to work on time. (*besides / although*)

9. I came close to the people. They recognized me. (*as soon as / as well as*)

10. I noticed that my television was missing. I called the police. (*despite / the moment*).

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

PART 1

1. What was Jimmy like?
2. Where did Jimmy head for after he had been released from prison?
3. What happened a week after Jimmy's release?
4. Why did he resume his old business?
5. Who was Ben Price?

PART 2

1. What did Jimmy intend to do in Elmore?
2. What did he go into when he decided to settle down in Elmore?
3. Who was Annabel Adams?
4. Why did Jimmy want to quit cracking safes for goods?
5. How was Jimmy's business going on?
6. What happened in the Elmore Bank?
7. What happened after the girls had been saved?
8. What did Jimmy expect Ben Price to do?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

PART 1

1. Why was Jimmy sentenced to prison? Why didn't he manage to get away with it?
2. Why did Jimmy resume his old business after he had been released? Why didn't he stop cracking safes as the warden advised him?
3. Why was Ben Price so sure that Jimmy was responsible for safe-burglary in Richmond and Logansport?

PART 2

1. Why do you think Jimmy set off for Elmore and decided to change the name?
2. What kind of relationship did Jimmy have with Annabel? With her family?
3. Why do you think Jimmy changed so much after he met up Annabel?
4. Why do you think Ben Price didn't arrest Jimmy Valentine? Why did he pretend that he didn't recognize Jimmy?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list the periods of Jimmy's life and his occupation during these periods. Then give examples how his character and way of life changed during these periods.

Period of life	
Before prison	An experienced burglar, cracked safes
After the release	Resumed his business, committed two more burglaries with no clue to the author
After he met Annabel	Quit cracking safes, successful in shoe business

2. Use the linking words / phrases from the box to make logical stories.

when	by the time	then	suddenly
the moment	by that time	next	all of a sudden
the instant	before that	later	out of the blue
as soon as	prior to that	following this	from out of nowhere
while / as	up until then	after that	luckily
after	afterwards	fortunately	then

a. After Jimmy's Release from Prison

go out of prison → head for a restaurant → take a train → meet a friend → set of burglar's tools → change clothes → safe-burglary in Richmond → safe-burglary in Logansport → Ben Price (investigate) → Jimmy (disappear)

b. In the Elmore Bank

Jimmy and Annabel's family (go downtown) → → Ben Price (walk away)

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Give examples from the story that show that Jimmy became another man after he fell in love with Annabel.
2. Discuss Ben Price's attitude to Jimmy before and after the events in the Elmore Bank. How did it change? Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
3. "If grass can grow through cement, love can find you at every time in your life" (Cher, in *The Times* 30 May 1998). How does it apply to the story you've read?

E. WRITING

1. Pretend to be Ben Price. Write a report, describing the burglary in Richmond and Logansport. Who is the suspect? Why do you think so?
2. Imagine that you witnessed the events in the Elmore Bank, when two girls got locked in the safe and then a man set them free. Write a letter to a friend describing what happened there.

UNIT 4

The Open Window

H.H. Munro (from "Saki")

PART 1

"My aunt will be down presently, Mr. Nuttel," said a very self-possessed young lady of fifteen; "in the meantime you must try and put up with me."

Framton Nuttel endeavored to say the correct something which should duly flatter the niece of the moment without unduly discounting the aunt that was to come. Privately he doubted more than ever whether these formal visits on a succession of total strangers would do much towards helping the nerve cure which he was supposed to be undergoing.

"I know how it will be," his sister had said when he was preparing to migrate to this rural retreat; "you will bury yourself down there and not speak to a living soul, and your nerves will be worse than ever from moping. I shall just give you letters of introduction to all the people I know there. Some of them, as far as I can remember, were quite nice."

Framton wondered whether Mrs. Sappleton, the lady to whom he was presenting one of the letters of introduction, came into the nice division.

"Do you know many of the people round here?" asked the niece, when she judged that they had had sufficient silent communion.

"Hardly a soul" said Framton. "My sister was staying here, at the rectory, you know, some four years ago, and she gave me letters of introduction to some of the people here."

He made the last statement in a tone of distinct regret.

"Then you know practically nothing about my aunt?" pursued the self-possessed young lady.

"Only her name and address," admitted the caller. He was wondering whether Mrs. Sappleton was in the married or widowed state. An indefinable something about the room seemed to suggest masculine habitation.

"Her great tragedy happened just three years ago," said the child; "that would be since your sister's time."

"Her tragedy?" asked Framton; somehow in this restful country spot tragedies seemed out of place.

"You may wonder why we keep that window wide open on an October afternoon," said the niece, indicating a large French window that opened onto a lawn.

"It is quite warm for the time of the year," said Framton; "but has that window got anything to do with the tragedy?"

"Out through that window, three years ago to a day, her husband and her two young brothers went off for their day's shooting. They never came back. In crossing the moor to their favorite snipe-shooting ground they were all three engulfed in a treacherous piece of bog. It had been that dreadful wet summer, you know, and places that were safe in other years gave way suddenly without warning. Their bodies were never recovered. That was the dreadful part of it." Here the child's voice lost its self-possessed note and became falteringly human. "Poor aunt always thinks that they will come back some day, they and the little brown spaniel that was lost with them, and walk in at that window just as they used to do. That is why the window is kept open every evening till it is quite dusk. Poor dear aunt, she has often told me how they went out, her husband with his white waterproof coat over his arm and Ruanie, her youngest brother, singing, 'Bertie, why do you bound?' as he always did to tease her, because she said it got on her nerves. Do you know, sometimes on still quiet evenings like this, I almost get a creepy feeling that they will all walk in through that window —"

PART 2

She broke off with a little shudder. It was a relief to Framton when the aunt bustled into the room with a whirl of apologies for being late in making her appearance.

"I hope Vera has been amusing you?" she said.

"She has been very interesting," said Framton.

"I hope you don't mind the open window," said Mrs. Sappleton briskly; "my husband and brothers will be home directly from shooting, and they always come in this way. They've been out for snipe in the marshes today, so they'll make a fine mess over my poor carpets. So like you men folk, isn't it?"

She rattled on cheerfully about the shooting and the scarcity of birds, and the prospects for duck in the winter. To Framton it was all purely horrible. He made a desperate but only partially successful effort to turn the talk on to a less ghastly topic; he was conscious that his hostess was giving him only a fragment of her attention, and her eyes were constantly straying past him to the open window and the lawn beyond. It was certainly an unfortunate coincidence that he should have paid his visit on this tragic anniversary.

"The doctors agree in ordering me complete rest, an absence of mental excitement, and avoidance of anything in the nature of violent physical exercise," announced Framton, who labored under the tolerably wide-spread delusion that total strangers and chance acquaintances are hungry for the least detail of one's ailments and infirmities, their cause and cure., "On the matter of diet they are not so much in agreement," he continued.

"No?" said Mrs. Sappleton, in a voice which only replaced a yawn at the last moment. Then she suddenly brightened into alert attention — but not to what Framton was saying.

"Here they are at last!" she cried "Just in time for tea, and don't they look as if they were muddy up to the eyes!*

Framton shivered slightly and turned towards the niece with a look intended to convey sympathetic comprehension. The child was staring out through the open window with dazed horror in her eyes. In a chill shock of nameless fear Framton swung round in his seat and looked in the same direction.

In the deepening twilight three figures were walking across the lawn towards the window; they all carried guns under their arms, and one of them was additionally burdened with a white coat hung over his shoulders. A tired brown spaniel kept close at their heels. Noiselessly they neared the house, and then a hoarse young voice chanted out of the dusk "I said, Bertie, why do you bound?"

Framton grabbed wildly at his stick and hat; the hall-door, the gravel-drive, and the front gate were dimly noted stages in his headlong retreat. A cyclist coming along the road had to run into the hedge to avoid imminent collision.

"Here we are, my dear," said the bearer of the white mackintosh, coming in through the window; "fairly muddy, but most of it's dry. Who was that who bolted out as we came up?"

"A most extraordinary man, a Mr. Nuttel," said Mrs. Sappleton; "could only talk about his illnesses, and dashed off without a word of good-bye or apology when you arrived. One would think he had seen a ghost."

"I expect it was the spaniel," said the niece calmly, "he told me he had a horror of dogs. He was once hunted into a cemetery somewhere on the banks of the Ganges by a pack of pariah dogs, and had to spend the night in a newly dug grave with the creatures snarling and grinning and foaming just above him. Enough to make any one lose their nerve."

Romance at short notice was her speciality.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. V O C A B U L A R Y

Part 1

1. endeavor/ to do something – to try very hard to do smth.

The company endeavored to compete for a leadership position in these markets with innovative products and the most advanced technology.

2. duly – in the proper or expected way

Here are your travel documents, all duly signed.

– at the proper time or as expected

The Queen duly appeared on the balcony to wave to the crowds.

3. flatter – to make smb. feel important attractive, to praise smb. in order to please them

Don't try to flatter me!

4. unduly – more than is normal or reasonable

She doesn't seem unduly concerned about her exams.

It didn't trouble me unduly.

5. discount – to regard something as unlikely to be true or important

Experts discounted the accuracy of the polls.

– to reduce the price of something

Games were discounted to as little as \$5

6. cure (n) (for) – a medicine or medical treatment that makes an illness go away

There is still no cure for AIDS.

– something that solves a problem, or improves a bad situation

There is no easy cure for loneliness.

cure (v.) (of) – to make an illness or medical condition go away

Many types of cancer can now be cured. an operation that can cure short-sightedness in 15 minutes

– to make someone well again after they have been ill

She had some acupuncture treatment which seems to have cured her.

7. rural – relating to the countryside or in the countryside

Crime is a concern in both rural and urban areas.

8. mope – to feel bored or unhappy and show no interest in doing anything

The week he died, we all sat around and moped.

9. a letter of introduction – a written or printed message from one person to another giving recommendations about smb.

I had sent off a few letters of introduction, but they weren't answered.

10. wonder – to think about smth because you want to know more facts about it.

'How did they find out?' she wondered.

wonder who/what/how etc.

I wonder where Joe is now.

wonder if/whether/why

Have you ever wondered why she looks so sad all the time?

11. judge – to form an opinion about smth. after considering all the details or facts.

He seems to be handling the job well, but it's really too soon to judge.

judge something/someone on something:

Schools are judged on their exam results.

judge something by something

Judged by modern standards, this was a cruel thing to do.

Her leadership will be judged by how she deals with difficult problems.

12. sufficient for/to do smth – as much as is needed (*sufficient time /information*)

Bedside lighting alone is not sufficient for most bedrooms.

The money should be sufficient for one month's travel.

13. rectory – a house where the priest of the local church lives

Life in a Mayfair rectory suited her very well and she had private means.

14. pursue – to follow or search for smb. or smth., in order to catch or attack

Police pursued the suspect for 20 minutes along Highway 5.

– to try to achieve something

She plans to pursue a career in politics.

15. engulf – to completely surround or cover something

The despair was so great that it threatened to engulf him

Global warming will cause the seas to rise, engulfing islands and flooding coastal areas.

16. treacherous – not loyal and secretly intending to harm you

They had a treacherous plot to overthrow the leader.

17. dreadful – very unpleasant

We've had some dreadful weather lately.

18. faltering – becoming less effective, successful; weak

She spoke to the court in a faltering voice.

19. tease – to say smth. in order to have fun by embarrassing them slightly

She used to tease me about my hair.

Don't tease the dog by showing her the treat if you're not going to give it to her.

20. creepy – unpleasant in a way that makes you feel nervous or frightened

I got a real creepy feeling on the way over there, as if someone was watching me.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. attempt, try, strive, struggle _____
2. apple-polish, fawn, honey, compliment, brown nose _____
3. suitable, fitting, enough, acceptable _____
4. estimate, consider, reckon, conclude _____
5. unpleasant, shocking, bad, awful _____
6. mock, laugh, annoy, banter, nickname _____
7. tremble, shake, quiver, flicker _____
8. follow, chase, accompany, run after _____
9. remedy, treatment, medicine _____
10. disloyal, unfaithful, unreliable, untrustworthy _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Don't take what she said seriously – she was _____.
A teasing B. thinking C. taunting D. encouraging
2. She _____ with fear at the thought of seeing him again.
A. shrugged B. dashed C. shivered D. shrieked
3. A good reporter will _____ a story until he or she knows all the facts.
A. promise B. pursue C. prosper D. persist
4. One aspirin should be _____ to relieve pain.
A. substantial B. sufficient C. imminent D. permanent
5. I realized I had committed _____ mistake.
A. nasty B. peaceful C. dreadful D. important
6. You're trying _____ me, and it won't work.
A. to flatter B. to battle C. to bolt D. to grab
7. Judge Harris said he would _____ to be fair to both sides.
A. endure B. define C. endeavor D. peer
8. It is difficult _____ the full extent of the damage.
A. judge B. flicker C. inquire D. banter
9. Adding a little oil into the mechanism is one of the best _____ for a noisy engine.
A. sufficient B. facts C. cures D. judges
10. Captain Baxter was murdered by his _____ crew.
A. dreadful B. numerous C. loyal D. treacherous

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

pursue	tease	shiver	endeavor	cure
flatter	dreadful	judge	sufficient	engulf

1. The journey was _____.
2. Students should _____ their own interests, as well as do their school work.
3. She _____ with fear at the thought of seeing him again.
4. We always _____ please our customers.
5. They were _____ by the invitation from the mayor.
6. You can't _____ a man's character by his looks.
7. There is now _____ evidence to prove his claims.
8. Kevin's always _____ me about my cooking.
9. As yet there's no known _____ for the disease.
10. He was _____, or at least sneaky.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. flatter | A. brown nose | B. flicker | C. puzzle | D. nickname |
| 2. dreadful | A. unpleasant | B. difficult | C. considerate | D. moody |
| 3. endeavor | A. endure | B. giggle | C. struggle | D. shutter |
| 4. pursue | A. approach | B. fail | C. predict | D. follow |
| 5. sufficient | A. sloppy | B. competent | C. successful | D. sincere |
| 6. tease | A. annoy | B. sooth | C. bustle | D. brake |
| 7. shiver | A. clutch | B. stare | C. tremble | D. shriek |
| 8. judge | A. annoy | B. estimate | C. grasp | D. collapse |
| 9. cure | A. help | B: satisfaction | C: struggle | D. treatment |
| 10. treacherous | A. disloyal | B: faithful | C: valuable | D: engulf |

Part 2

- 1. relief (n)** – a relaxed feeling you get because something bad has not happened

It's a huge relief to know that everyone is safe.

to someone's relief

To her relief, someone had found the keys and handed them in. To my relief, they spoke English.

relieve (v) – to make (smth. bad or painful) less severe

She was given morphine to relieve the pain.

- 2. bustle** – to do things in a hurried and busy way

Thomas bustled around the apartment, getting everything ready.

3. amuse – to make smb. laugh or smile / to keep smb. interested or entertained

Adams first began drawing cartoons to amuse his coworkers.

4. brisk – speaking quickly and only saying what is necessary.

Business has been brisk lately.

5. conscious – awake, aware of what is happening around you, and able to think

She's out of surgery but not fully conscious yet.

6. ghastly – shocking in a way that frightens or upsets you

She had a ghastly expression on her face.

7. stray – to move away from a place where you should be

The plane disappeared after straying several hundred miles off course

8. coincidence – an occasion when two or more things happen at the same time

Was our meeting here a coincidence?

9. delusion – an idea or belief that is not true

We have no delusions that these kids are going to play pro basketball, but they are having fun

10. ailment – an illness, usually not a serious one

He was an alcoholic and was plagued by a variety of ailments

11. brighten – to start to have more color or light

Her presence brightens my days.

12. alert – quick to see, understand, and act in a particular situation

She's remained physically fit and mentally alert.

13. muddy – covered with mud or full of mud

Take your boots off outside if they're muddy.

14. shiver – if you shiver, your body shakes slightly

We stood shivering in the icy wind.

shiver with cold/fear/surprise etc:

Lizzy looked out at the thick snow and shivered with excitement.

15. convey – to communicate ideas or feelings indirectly

These results will enable us at least to convey a sense of progress.

16. dazed – unable to think clearly or understand what is happening

The driver in the accident appeared dazed but not badly hurt.

17. swing – to move in a particular direction with a smooth curving movement

Juan swung around to look at her

18. twilight – the time in the evening when the sky is beginning to get dark

I love walking along the beach at twilight

19. burden – a serious or difficult responsibility that you have to deal with

Having to make all the decisions is a terrible burden to me.

20. hoarse – smb who has a hoarse voice speaks in a low rough voice

His voice dropped to a hoarse whisper.

21. chant – to keep shouting or singing a word or phrase many times

Ali was mobbed by adoring crowds chanting his name.

22. bound – to move quickly with large, jumping movements

bound up/towards/across, etc.

There was a shout, and suddenly Adrian bounded into the room.

23. grab – to take hold of something in a rough or rude way

One of the men was grabbed and bundled into a car.

24. retreat (n) – the act of going away because you are unwilling to fight

Rebel soldiers were in (full) retreat.

retreat (v) – to move away from an enemy, to move back

He saw her and retreated, too shy to speak to her.

25. imminent – likely or certain to happen very soon

He was in imminent danger of dying.

He smiled in anticipation of her imminent arrival.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. entertain, beguile, bewilder, delude, cheat, deceive | _____ |
| 2. inevitable, close, coming, approaching, looming | _____ |
| 3. impart, carry, reveal, disclose, make known | _____ |
| 4. vigilant, watchful, observant | _____ |
| 5. load, trouble, responsibility, strain, weight | _____ |
| 6. withdrawal, recession, retrogression | _____ |
| 7. comfort, relaxation, ease, alleviation | _____ |
| 8. snatch, grasp, snap, seize, clutch | _____ |

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Taking notes is one of the best ways to stay _____ in lectures.
A. important B. agreeable C. evident D. alert
2. Aspirin may give you some _____ .
A. retreat B. respect C. relish D. relief
3. I don't want to be a _____ on my children.
A. blaze B. burden C. burglar D. bureau
4. The invading forces are now in _____ .
A. disregard B. amuse C. retreat D. burden
5. We need something that will _____ the child for an afternoon.
A. stop B. amuse C. mock D. amaze
6. He _____ a knife and dives at the robber.
A. catches B. moves C. swings D. grabs
7. Many species of animal are in _____ danger of extinction.
A. prominent B. proficient C. eminent D. imminent
8. I want to _____ to children that reading is one of life's greatest treats.
A. obey B. convey C. insist D. collapse

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

burden	grab	alert	imminent
convey	amuse	retreat	relief

1. Some of the buildings were in the state of _____ collapse.
2. He _____ a knife and dived at the robber.
3. A good photograph can often _____ far more than words.
4. Passengers should try to stay _____ at all times, and report any suspicious packages to the police immediately.
5. Her stories never fail to _____ me.
6. The medication brought him some _____ from the pain.
7. They were attacked and forced _____.
8. Unemployment places a heavy _____ on the welfare state.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. grab	A. gaze	B. flicker	C. convey	D. grasp
2. amuse	A. abuse	B. snatch	C. entertain	D. tease
3. alert	A. alone	B. sincere	C. vigilant	D. vibrant
4. retreat	A. recession	B. relief	C. retraction	D. receipt
5. relief	A. rebel	B. comfort	C. commitment	D. rescue
6. imminent	A. important	B. inevitable	C. relaxed	D. quick
7. convey	A. impact	B. convince	C. console	D. impart
8. burden	A. beam	B. loan	C. load	D. burglar

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. **put up with** – to accept (smth that is unpleasant or not desirable) patiently; bear

I don't know why she puts up with him.

2. **go off** – to leave a place, especially for a particular purpose

Don't go off without saying goodbye, will you?

3. **give way** – to collapse, to fail

The river was so high that the dam gave way.

4. **break off** – to stop doing something, especially speaking:

People would break off their conversations when she came into the room.

5. **rattle on** – to talk quickly and for a long time

Nancy would rattle on for hours about her grandchildren.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| 1. give way | a. to stop speaking |
| 2. put up with | b. to leave a place |
| 3. break off | c. to talk quickly and for a long time |
| 4. go off | d. to accept patiently, bear |
| 5. rattle on | e. to collapse |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

- Linda stopped speaking, realizing that she was wrong.
- Dave's left to the south of France for the summer.
- We had to bear Jim's poor table manners because he refused to change.
- At every meeting of the women's club Mrs. White talks quickly for hours.

5. Mary's legs collapsed and she fainted.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Jim was in the middle of a funny story when he _____ to answer the telephone.
2. Helen's mother told her not to _____ without warning her.
3. Nancy would _____ for about grandchildren.
4. The wooden seats _____ under the weight of the crowd.
5. I will not _____ your bad behavior any longer!

Part 2

1. turn smth on smth – to direct something to something or someone, to point

The firemen were called to turn the water on the crowd to make them leave.

2. come along – to move, to pass, to arrive

My teacher came along just as we were talking about him.

3. run into – to bump, to crash into, to hit

I ran my head into the glass door and it hurts badly.

4. come up – to approach, to come close

We saw a big black bear coming up on us from the woods.

5. dash off – to leave quickly or suddenly, because you are in a hurry.

I've got to dash off straight after lunch to meet a client.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. run into | a. to approach, to come close |
| 2. come along | b. to direct |
| 3. come up | c. to move, to pass, to arrive |
| 4. dash off | d. to leave quickly or suddenly |
| 5. turn smth on | e. to bump, to hit |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. Strangers approach to him in the street and say how much they enjoy his books.

2. Just then a bus arrived so we got on and rode home.
3. Joe lost control of his bike and crashed into a tree.
4. Excuse me, please, if I leave now, I have a class in five minutes.
5. The attacker killed three people then he pointed the gun at himself.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. While I was waiting for the bus, a man _____ and started asking questions.
2. I'm sorry, I must _____ now I'm really late for the concert.
3. Only Jane was invited to the party but her sisters _____ too.
4. I _____ a gatepost and hurt my knee.
5. Please _____ your light _____ this pile of old clothes; I think it's a person, still breathing.

C. I d i o m s

1. **make a statement** – to say something formally and officially

Robinson refuses to make a statement of any kind concerning his involvement.

2. **out of place** – in the wrong place or at the wrong time, not suitable, improper

He never seemed to feel out of place at social functions.

3. **have smth/nothing to do with** – to be connected with someone or something

Was the dispute anything to do with safety regulations?

4. **get on one's nerves** – to annoy someone, esp. by doing something repeatedly

Nick's whining is really starting to get on my nerves.

Children get on their parents nerves by asking so many questions.

5. **make an appearance** – to go to an event for a short time

I didn't really want to go to the party but I thought I should make an appearance.

6. **make a mess** – to make a place messy

Eric, you're making a mess! I hope you're planning to clean it up.

7. **make an effort** – to try very hard to do smth.

Jack has made a concerted effort to improve his behavior.

I wish you'd make an effort to get on with my friends.

We make every effort to satisfy clients' wishes.

They made no effort to include us in the negotiations

8. **pay a visit** – to visit smb.

Please, pay a visit to our house whenever you are in our town.

9. **have a horror of smth** – to be afraid of something or dislike it very much

He has a horror of snakes.

10. lose one's nerve – become nervous so that you can't do what you intended to do

Jensen would've won if he hadn't lost his nerve.

11. at/on short notice – if you do something at short notice, you do not have very much time to prepare for it

The trip was planned on short notice.

Thanks for agreeing to see me at such short notice.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

at short notice
pay a visit

have to do with
lose one's nerve

get on one's nerve
have a horror of

out of place

1. Dan wanted to ask his boss for a day off but he _____ at the last minute.
2. The party was arranged _____.
3. She's always moaning. It really _____.
4. Most of the articles _____ America's role in the world since the end of the Cold War.
5. Extremely informal language is _____ in an academic essay.
6. He _____ being in a confined space.
7. He decided it was time _____ to his old friend.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. The President will _____ a statement to the press this afternoon.
2. You can make cookies if you promise not to _____ a mess in the kitchen.
3. Jim _____ well in the examinations, reaching the top place in most subjects.
4. I know you don't like her, but please, _____ an effort to be polite.

5. She has _____ numerous appearances on TV game shows.
6. A breath of fresh air will _____ you good.

D. WORD STUDY

AILMENT ▪ ILLNESS ▪ DISEASE ▪ DISORDER

1. ailment – an illness, usually not a serious one

He was an alcoholic and was plagued by a variety of ailments.

2. illness – the state of feeling ill or having a disease

He died at home after a long illness.

3. disease – an illness that affects people, especially one that is caused by infection

Mumps is an infectious disease.

4. disorder – an illness of the mind or body (*a mental/physical disorder*)

He was suffering from some form of psychiatric disorder.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. She suffers from an eating _____.
2. Hundreds of thousands of trees died from Dutch elm _____.
3. He missed five days of school because of _____.
4. Most people with acute mental _____ can be treated at home.
5. He suffers from heart _____.
6. The medicine was supposed to cure all kind of _____ - raging from colds to back pains.

▪ PUT ▪

1. put across – to explain clearly; to make yourself understood

Television can be a useful way of putting across health messages.

2. put smth by – to save smth for a later use

Kelly is trying to put by some money every week for her summer holidays.

3. put down – to record smth in writing

He put down the story while it was fresh in his mind.

to criticize smb cruelly

He's always trying to put me down.

to stop by force to crush

In 24 hours the general had entirely put down the rebellion.

4. put off – to embarrass, displease

The man's slovenliness put me off.

to postpone, to wait and have at a later time

They put off the picnic because of the rain.

5. put in to fix something such as equipment in the place, install

They're coming to put the new kitchen in next week.

to spend (time)

He put in many years as a printer.

6. put on – to dress in

Put your shoes on.

to add or increase (an amount or action)

I put on my brakes too fast, and the car skidded.

to deceive smb, to play a joke on someone, to kid

"I hear Joe's left his wife." "You're putting me on!"

7. put out – to extinguish (e.g. fire)

The firemen put the fire out very quickly.

8. put through – to connect by telephone

I'll put you through to the correct department, madam.

9. put up – to erect/ construct smth (e.g. tent)

I want to put up a fence between our property and our neighbor's.

to supply/provide smth (e.g. money)

He put up the money to build a hotel.

to increase the level/price of smth.

A lot of shops have put up their prices recently.

to provide smb with accommodation

I can put you up in my spare room for a few days while you look for a flat.

10. put up with – to tolerate, to accept smth unpleasant/inconvenient

I can't put up with his rudeness any longer.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. I'm not going to put _____ their smoking any longer.
2. Could you put me _____ to the manager, please?
3. Put _____ all fires before leaving the camping ground.
4. I put _____ weight when I gave up smoking.
5. Put _____ your gloves. It's very cold.

6. I was rather put _____ by the shamelessness of his proposal.
7. Put your ideas _____ on paper and I'll look at them later.
8. I have a little money put _____ for a rainy day.
9. He made an unkind remark, intended to put her _____.
10. Never put _____ tomorrow what you can do today.
11. The job takes up a lot of your time and you have to put _____ a lot of extra hours.
12. When the voice on the phone told Mrs. Jones that she had won a \$10 000 prize, she thought someone was putting her _____.
13. The original college buildings were put _____ in the 16th century.
14. Fortunately, a local businessman has agreed to put _____ the money for the hospital's new wing.
15. He missed the last bus home, but luckily his aunt lived nearby, so she put him _____ for a night.
16. The government has promised that taxes will not be put _____ again this year.
17. We're having a burglar alarm put _____.
18. He knew how to put his ideas _____.
19. The boy took off his clothes and put _____ his pajamas.
20. He put _____ an hour a day reading.

E. R E V I S I O N

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. I tried to _____ my sympathy by touching her hand.
 A. collapse B. convey C. engage D. resume
2. The water was cold, and Robbie _____.
 A. shivered B. secure C. released D. gazed

3. We had to be _____ to any danger signs in the economy.
A. imminent B. amiable C. assiduous D. alert
4. He made funny faces _____ the children.
A. to puzzle B. to amuse C. to offer D. to insist
5. John's always _____ me about my accent.
A. teasing B. impressing C. pursuing D. annoying
6. He soon realized he had made _____ a mistake.
A. creepy B. mean C. dreadful D. eminent
7. We are working together _____ a common goal.
A. to disregard B. to pursue C. to grasp D. bustle
8. What gives you the right _____ people.
A. to secure B. to proceed C. to judge D. to irritate
9. I _____ to explain the legal consequences of his action.
A. owned B. handled C. acquired D. endeavored
10. You're trying _____ me, and it won't work.
A. to relish B. to flatter C. to convey D. relieve
11. It was decided that there was _____ evidence to convict Marconi.
A. irritable B. sensible C. sufficient D. stingy
12. A man tried _____ her handbag as she was walking through the park.
A. to blemish B. to quit C. to gaze D. to grab
13. Soon it became clear to everyone that war was _____ .
A. imminent B. innocent C. convivial D. eminent
14. Running the business on my own can be _____ at times.
A. a bottom B. a burden C. a barrel D. a buggy

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

endeavor	grab	dreadful	burden	amuse
shiver	flatter	imminent	pursue	convey
judge	tease	sufficient	alert	

1. The child was in _____ danger of falling into the water.
2. She _____ a child's hand and ran.
3. All this information can be _____ in a simple diagram.
4. Julia _____ and pulled her coat more tightly around her.
5. Security guards must be _____ at all times.
6. We need something that will _____ a 10-year-old for an afternoon.
7. I didn't mean to make you mad; I was only _____.
8. The coffee tasted _____!

9. Police _____ the gunman into an abandoned building.
10. We need _____ time to deal with the problem
11. He seems like a nice guy, but it's too early to _____.
12. We have _____ to make the vehicle environmentally friendly.
13. Perry would always _____ Mrs. Mitchel by praising her cooking.
14. We need to reduce the tax _____ of middle-income Americans.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. flatter | A. rebuke | B. brown nose | C. estrange | D. separate |
| 2. tease | A. mock | B. treat | C. jerk | D. muster |
| 3. sufficient | A. suspicious | B. acceptable | C. agreeable | D. proficient |
| 4. amuse | A. bound | B. snatch | C. flicker | D. bewilder |
| 5. alert | A. abiding | B. vigilant | C. assiduous | D. vivid |
| 6. judge | A. conclude | B. delude | C. reckon | D. strive |
| 7. imminent | A. innocent | B. prominent | C. looming | D. cordial |
| 8. endeavor | A. strive | B. banter | C. fawn | D. endure |
| 9. grab | A. pursue | B. grumble | C. clap | D. clutch |
| 10. convey | A. impact | B. cover | C. impart | D. crack |
| 11. shiver | A. secure | B. quiver | C. quit | D. handle |
| 12. pursue | A. chase | B. endeavor | C. punish | D. polish |
| 13. dreadful | A. evident | B. prosperous | C. shocking | D. compulsory |
| 14. burden | A. strain | B. strength | C. boredom | D. retreat |

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to the boldfaces word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. flatter | A. proceed | B. insult | C. fawn | D. amuse |
| 2. tease | A. calm | B. erupt | C. resume | D. torment |
| 3. amuse | A. bore | B. impress | C. achieve | D. bewilder |
| 4. imminent | A. specious | B. delayed | C. important | D. decisive |
| 5. endeavor | A. give up | B. tolerate | C. attempt | D. effect |
| 6. convey | A. conceal | B. convert | C. consist | D. impart |
| 7. dreadful | A. determined | B. faithful | C. delightful | D. nasty |
| 8. burden | A. ailment | B. relief | C. trouble | D. depression |

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I can't _____ her another day, she never stops complaining.
2. The bridge threatened to _____ as the flood waters rose.
3. Why did the painter leave his family and _____ to live on a tropical island?

4. The speaker was interrupted so often that he _____ and sat down.
5. Make sure that you _____ every word she says.
6. As I was standing on a bus stop a man _____ and asked for a light.
7. She said goodbye and _____ to keep an appointment.
8. The bus went out of control and _____ a line of people.
9. Every time we met, she _____ for hours about her college years.
10. We _____ the central heating _____ when we moved here.
11. All hotels are full, so we can _____ you _____ for several days.
12. We've had to _____ our wedding _____ until September
14. Firefighters soon _____ the fire _____.
13. Which dress shall I _____ for the party?
15. Can you _____ me _____ to this number?
16. Advertisements are intended to _____ the best qualities of the product to the public.
17. The firemen _____ their holes _____ the blaze.
18. She won't get married until the right man _____.
19. We are trying to _____ a little _____ each month for a new car.
20. I can tell you exactly what she said – I _____ it all _____ in my notebook.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. I stood at the top of the ski-slope for a minute then _____.
2. I _____ to sound interested in what he was saying.
3. John's noisy eating habits _____.
4. The puppy's _____ on the dining room rug.
5. He was changing a light bulb when the ladder _____.
6. Kieran felt very _____ among Helen's solicitor friends.
7. I'm quite sure Nancy's resignation _____ with her health.
8. The candidate _____ to the press.
9. His elder brother Edwin was next _____ to the baronetcy, but he was a total invalid.

10. The government waits for an economic miracle while, _____, whole industries collapse.
11. I didn't really want to go to the party but I thought I should _____.
12. He _____ heights, that's why he has refused to work in an office on the top floor.
13. I can't cancel my plans _____, I need some more time.
14. Bill decided to _____ to his aunt.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *un-*, *dis-*.

_____ correct	_____ sufficient	_____ conscious	_____ formal
_____ agreement	_____ tolerable	_____ fortunate	_____ successful
_____ safe	_____ complete		

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

- After writing three _____ plays, Miller finally had a hit.
- The fall from his horse knocked him _____ for several minutes.
- The bridge is closed because it's _____.
- He charged that the news story was factually _____ and demanded an apology.
- What happened to Monica was just a freak accident - it was very _____.
- The polls have closed but the results of the election are still _____.
- The candidates had few _____ about the major issues.
- There was _____ evidence, so we had to find him not guilty.

9. The _____ meetings at Camp David were important in strengthening mutual understanding and trust.
10. This hot weather is becoming _____.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. A friend found the girl in the street _____ a distressed state.
2. The picture looks _____ of place here.
3. The doctor told her patient that there was no cure _____ his illness.
4. I make no apologies _____ repeating my views.
5. We are all _____ agreement that Mr Ross should resign.
6. The woman at the desk greeted him _____ a bored voice.
7. She must have changed her mind _____ the last moment and decided not to come.
8. I want to be home _____ time for tea.
9. He isn't seriously injured but he is _____ a shock.
10. The doctor will be here soon. _____ the meantime, try and relax.
11. Hankins has won the tournament five times in succession.
12. Several campaign workers wandered around, still _____ shock at their candidate's huge defeat.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. People are hungry _____ good music.
2. The man, burdened _____ grocery bags, had trouble walking up the steps.
3. Torreo apologized _____ the delay in handling the order.
4. I wish my mother approved _____ my friends.
5. She insisted _____ seeing her lawyer.
6. Jason didn't approve _____ his sister's wanting to marry at such a young age.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. The players are prepared _____ a tough game.
2. The employee admitted _____ the money.
3. He seems _____ French well.
4. I used _____ meat, but now I'm a vegetarian.
5. We intend _____ to Australia next year to visit our daughter.
6. If you want to lose weight, avoid _____ between meals.
7. He endeavored _____ calm.
8. I think she's well enough _____ the trip.

9. Tom suggested _____ on TV.
10. I don't know how _____ the house for the party.
11. Do not hesitate _____ me, if you've got problems with it.
12. He is too young _____ in the house alone.
13. After her boss refused her point-blank, she considered _____.
14. Have you decided where _____ your holiday?

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of say or tell.

1. She decided _____ the truth.
2. He used _____ his children a story every night.
3. She _____ good morning as she came into the office.
4. Helen _____ me that she was going to be late.
5. They are twins; it's hard to _____ one from the other.
6. She _____ that she had been driving to work.
7. I'd like to _____ a few words about his new book.
8. Sally kept asking him about that party but he _____ no more.
9. He could think one thing, and _____ another.
10. The little boy _____ his prayers and went to bed.

7. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. "I'm in a hurry because my bus is leaving in 10 minutes," Cindy said.

2. "Are you flying to Rome next week?" he asked Tom.

3. "Sally was working hard in the lab yesterday," Ann said to me.

4. "Who was at the party?" Cindy asked me.

5. "How can I get to Pine Street?" she asked me.

6. "You'll never believe what happened yesterday," Kathy said.

7. "Jason is having a party at his house tomorrow," Melinda said.

8. "Where is the building?" they asked me.

9. "I've ordered a new fridge," she said.

10. "He took the money to the bank this morning," she said.

11. "Was anyone injured?" the reporter asked.

12. "I can do the shopping for you," she said.

13. "Will you be back the following day?" he asked.

14. "I may be a little late this evening," she said.

8. Turn these sentences into reported speech choosing an introductory verb

agree deny	promise suggest	offer explain	refuse complain
-----------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------

1. "No, I won't come to France with you, Jerry!" said Amanda.

2. "Shall we take a long walk along the riverside?" said Mary.

3. "I couldn't sleep last night because of the noise from the street," Cindy said.

4. "I'll carry the bags for you," said Beth.

5. "It wasn't me who split the coffee on the tablecloth," said Greg.

6. "Ok, I'll show him around the city," Danny said.

7. "I'll be home early," he said.

-
8. "I was late because I was held up in a traffic jam," Bill said.
-

9. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. *The reason why / because* he resigned was that he had been offered a better job.
2. I took a taxi *because of / because* it was raining.
3. The job was very dangerous. *That's why / The reason for* she turned it down.
4. It was very cold, *so / because of* I wore my coat.
5. She didn't close the gate. *As a result / because* the dog escaped.
6. Simon is often invited to parties, *the reason for / since* he is a popular person.
7. He missed his flight. *The reason why / As a consequence* he was the only one who didn't attend the conference.
8. The flight was delayed five hours *because of / as* some technical difficulties.
9. *So / As* we both want to lose weight, we had some salad for lunch.
10. *The reason for / Since* investing some of her money in bonds was that she wanted to increase her income.

11. Join the ideas using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. The singer cancelled his appearance. He was feeling unwell. (*since / in addition*)
-

2. The Prime Minister was out of the country. He didn't attend the press conference.

(*While / That's why*)

3. The car skidded on the road. It was icy. (*because / although*)
-

4. The stereo had been broken. There was no music to dance to. (*despite / so*)
-

5. Laura missed the last bus. She had to walk all the way home. (*As a result / What's more*)

6. Tom apologized. He had forgotten Jane's birthday. (*The reason why / However*)

7. It was snowing heavily. The village was cut off. (*As a consequence / As soon as*)

8. Her shoes were too tight. Her feet hurt. (*the moment / so*)

9. He had been studying hard during the semester. He got top marks in all his exams.

(*As / Nevertheless*)

10. He is wearing a hat. He doesn't want people to know he is bald. (*as long as / because*)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

PART 1

1. Where did Mr. Nuttel decide to go to cure his nerves?
2. What kind of place was it?
3. Who recommended him to go there?
4. Who was Vera? What was she like?
5. What story did Vera tell Mr. Nuttel about her aunt's family?
6. How did he feel about it?

PART 2

1. Why was Mr. Nuttel so relieved when Mrs. Suppleton made her appearance?
2. What did Mrs. Suppleton tell him about her husband?
3. Why was Mr. Nuttel so horrified?
4. What did Mr. Nuttel see through the open window as he was talking to the hostess of the house?
5. What did he do when three figures neared the house and one of them started singing?
6. What did the girl say about Mr. Nuttel after his escape? Was it true?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

PART 1

1. What kind of person was Mr. Nuttel ? Do you think he was sociable?
2. Why did his sister advise him to go to that place?
3. Why do you think the girl's story made Mr. Nuttel feel nervous?
4. Do you think the girl's story sounded convincing?

PART 2

1. How did Mrs. Suppleton behave when she appeared?
2. Why did he try to turn the talk on to a different topic?
3. Do you think Mrs. Sappleton was concerned about Mr. Nuttel's health?
4. What was Mr. Nuttel's reaction when he saw three figures approaching the house?
5. What was the last straw that made Mr. Nuttel escape?
6. What was Vera so good at?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. **Make a chart and list each character qualities. Give examples of their behavior.**

Character	Qualities	Behavior / Event
Mr. Nuttel	unsociable	tended to be alone, unwilling to talk to people
Vera	talkative	Rattled on all the time, didn't let a listener put in a word

2. Use the linking words / phrases from the box to make a logical story.

When	By the time	Then	Suddenly
The moment	By that time	Next	All of a sudden
The instant	Before that	Later	Out of the blue
As soon as	Prior to that	Following this	From out of nowhere
While / As	Up until then	After that	Luckily
After		Afterwards	Fortunately

have health problems / suffer from nerves → his sister (advise) to go to some quiet place → stay at Mrs. Sappleton → first visit / know nothing about the hostess and people around there → talk to Vera → “great tragedy” → nervous / uncomfortable → Mrs. Sappleton (enter) → tell about the family → Mr. Nuttel (feel) more and more horrified → three figures → Mr. Nuttel (dash off) → the family (surprised) → Vera (tell) another story

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Give examples from the story, which show how horrified Mr. Nuttel was getting as he was listening to Vera and her aunt.

2. Discuss Mrs. Sappleton's attitude toward Mr.Nuttel. Do you think anyone regret that Mr.Nuttel leave the place so soon?
3. What do you think Mrs. Sappleton would tell her neighbors about the strange visitor?

E. W R I T I N G

1. Pretend to be Mr. Nuttel. Write a letter to your sister describing your visit to Mrs. Sappleton's house.
2. Suppose Vera is late for school. What excuse would she invent? Write a short story that Vera could tell if she was late foe classes.

UNIT 5

THE DREAM

W. S. Maugham

PART 1

It chanced that in August 1917 the work upon which I was then engaged obliged me to go from New York to Petrograd, and I was instructed for safety's sake to travel by way of Vladivostok. I landed there in the morning and passed an idle day as best I could. The Trans Siberian train was due to start, so far as I remember, at about nine in the evening. I dined at the station restaurant by myself. It was crowded and I shared a small table with a man whose appearance entertained me. He was a Russian, a tall fellow, but amazingly stout, and he had so vast a paunch that he was obliged to sit well away from the table. His hands, small for his size, were buried in rolls of fat. His hair, long, dark, and thin, was brushed carefully across his crown in order to conceal his baldness, and his huge sallow face, with its enormous double chin, clean-shaven, gave you an impression of indecent nakedness. His nose was small, a funny little button upon that mass of flesh, and his black shining eyes were small too. But he had a large, red, and sensual mouth. He was dressed neatly enough in a black suit. It was not worn but shabby; it looked as if it had been neither pressed nor brushed since he had had it.

The service was bad and it was almost impossible to attract the attention of a waiter. We soon got into conversation. The Russian spoke good and fluent English. His accent was marked but not tiresome. He asked me many questions about myself and my plans, which—my occupation at the time making caution necessary—I answered with a show of frankness but with dissimulation. I told him I was a journalist. He asked me whether I wrote fiction and when I confessed that in my leisure moments I did, he began to talk of the later Russian novelists. He spoke intelligently. It was plain that he was a man of education.

By this time we had persuaded the waiter to bring us some cabbage soup, and my acquaintance pulled a small bottle of vodka from his pocket, which he invited me to share. I do not know whether it was the vodka or the natural loquaciousness of his race that made him communicative, but presently he told me, unasked, a good deal

about himself. He was of noble birth, it appeared, a lawyer by profession, and a radical. Some trouble with the authorities had made it necessary for him to be much abroad, but now he was on his way home. Business had detained him at Vladivostok, but he expected to start for Moscow in a week and if I went there he would be charmed to see me.

‘Are you married?’ he asked me.

I did not see what business it was of his, but I told him that I was. He sighed a little.

‘I am widower,’ he said. ‘My wife was a Swiss, a native of Geneva. She was a very cultivated woman. She spoke English, German, and Italian perfectly. French, of course, was her native tongue. Her Russian was much above the average for a foreigner. She had scarcely the trace of an accent.’

He called a waiter who was passing with a tray full of dishes and asked him, I suppose—for then I knew hardly any Russian—how much longer we were going to wait for the next course. The waiter, with a rapid but presumably reassuring exclamation, hurried on, and my friend sighed.

‘Since the revolution the waiting in restaurants has become abominable.’

He lighted his twentieth cigarette and I, looking at my watch, wondered whether I should get a square meal before it was time for me to start.

‘My wife was a very remarkable woman,’ he continued. ‘She taught languages at one of the best schools for the daughters of noblemen in Petrograd. For a good many years we lived together on perfectly friendly terms. She was, however, of a jealous temperament and unfortunately she loved me to distraction.’

It was difficult for me to keep a straight face. He was one of the ugliest men I had ever seen. There is sometimes a certain charm in the rubicund and jovial fat man, but this saturnine obesity was repulsive.

‘I do not pretend that I was faithful to her. She was not young when I married her and we had been married for ten years. She was small and thin, and she had a bad complexion. She had a bitter tongue. She was a woman who suffered from a fury of possession, and she could not bear me to be attracted **to** anyone but her. She was jealous not only of the women I knew, but of my friends, my cat, and my books. On one occasion in my absence she gave away a coat of mine merely because I liked none of my coats so well. But I am of an equable temperament. I will not deny that

she bored me, but I accepted her, acrimonious disposition as an act of God and no more thought of rebelling against it than I would against bad weather or a cold in the head. I denied her accusations, as long as it was possible to deny them, and when it was impossible I shrugged my shoulders and smoked a cigarette.

The constant scenes she made me did not very much affect me. I led my own life. Sometimes, indeed, I wondered whether it was passionate love she felt for me or passionate hate. It seemed to me that love and hate were very near allied.

PART 2

So we might have continued to the end of the chapter if one night a very curious thing had not happened. I was awakened by a piercing scream from my wife. Startled, I asked her what was the matter. She told me that she had had a fearful nightmare; she had dreamt that I was trying to kill her. We lived at the top of a large house and the well round which the stairs climbed was broad. She had dreamt that just as we had arrived at our own floor I had caught hold of her and attempted to throw her over the balusters. It was six storeys to the stone floor at the bottom and it meant certain death.

She was much shaken. I did my best to soothe her. But next morning, and for two or three days after, she referred **to** the subject again and, notwithstanding my laughter, I saw that it dwelt in her mind. I could not help thinking of it either, for this dream showed me something that I had never suspected. She thought I hated her, she thought I would gladly be rid of her; she knew of course that she was insufferable, and at some time or other the idea had evidently occurred to her that I was capable of murdering her. The thoughts of men are incalculable and ideas enter our minds that we should be ashamed to confess. Sometimes I had wished that she might run away with a lover, sometimes that a painless and sudden death might give me my freedom; but never, never had the idea come to me that I might deliberately rid myself of an intolerable burden.

The dream made an extraordinary impression upon both of us. It frightened my wife, and she became for a little less bitter and more tolerant. But when I walked up the stairs to our apartment it was impossible for me not to look over the balusters and

reflect how easy it would be to do what she had dreamt. The balusters were dangerously low. A quick gesture and the thing was done. It was hard to put the thought out of my mind. Then some months later my wife awakened me one night. I was very tired and I was exasperated. She was white and trembling. She had had the dream again. She burst into tears and asked me if I hated her. I swore by all the saints of the Russian calendar that I loved her. At last she went to sleep again. It was more than I could do. I lay awake. I seemed to see her falling down the well of the stairs, and heard her shriek and the thud as she struck the stone floor. I could not help shivering.'

The Russian stopped and beads of sweat stood on his forehead. He had told the story well and fluently so that I had listened with attention. There was still some vodka in the bottle; he poured it out and swallowed it at a gulp.

'And how did your wife eventually die?' I asked after a pause.

He took out a dirty handkerchief and wiped his forehead.

'By an extraordinary coincidence she was found late one night at the bottom of the stairs with her neck broken.'

'Who found her?'

'She was found by one of the lodgers who came in shortly after the catastrophe.'

'And where were you?'

I cannot describe the look he gave me of malicious cunning. His little black eyes sparkled.

'I was spending the evening with a friend of mine. I did not come in till an hour later.'

At that moment the waiter brought us the dish of meat that we had ordered, and the Russian fell upon it with good appetite. He shoveled the food into his mouth in enormous mouthfuls.

I was taken aback. Had he really been telling me in this hardly veiled manner that he had murdered his wife? That obese and sluggish man did not look like a murderer; I could not believe that he would have had the courage. Or was he making a sardonic joke at my expense?

In a few minutes it was time for me to go and catch my train. I left him and I have not seen him since. But I have never been able to make up my **mind** whether he was serious or jesting.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. **idle** – not being used; having no work; lazy

Don't worry. I have not been idle while you were away.

2. **due(to)** – expected (supposed) to happen or should happen

The case is due to go to court next month.

3. **stout** – slightly fat, heavy, strong

He became stout as he grew older.

4. **vast** – extremely large

We were driving along a vast empty plain.

5. **paunch** – a fat stomach, usually on a man

Stop drinking so much beer! You're getting quite a paunch!

6. **sallow** – yellow and unhealthy looking skin

His face was sallow, probably due to his sick liver.

7. **indecent** – not modest, not according to general standards

"It is indecent to point your finger at people", mother said to her little son.

8. **nakedness** – nudity; being without clothes, undressed

There is a lot of nakedness in recent films.

9. **dissimulation** – hypocrisy, deception, pretence

She wasn't really ill; it was only dissimulation.

10. **confess** – to admit to have done smth wrong

Eventually he confessed to the police.

11. **fluent** – spoken well and without difficulty

Steve speaks fluent Japanese.

12. **marked** – clear and noticeable

I noticed a marked difference in Sam's behavior.

13. **detain** – to keep smb somewhere for some time, to keep off

What detained the train departure? It was due to leave 10 minutes ago.

14. **leisure** – activities you do to relax or enjoy yourself

My busy schedule leaves little time for leisure.

15. persuade – to make smb agree to do smth by giving good reasons

He did finally come with us, although it took a long time to persuade him.

16. average – the amount, standard that is typical of a group of things

Her performance in the test was way below average.

17. trace – a slight sign of smth

She was seen leaving the house, then disappeared without trace

18. presumably – probably, likely

They are students, so presumably they won't have a lot of money.

19. abominable – causing a strong feeling of dislike; disgusting

The food in the hotel was abominable.

20. loquaciousness – talkativeness, loquacity

Jessica can't keep secrets because of her natural loquaciousness.

21. distraction – smth that prevents you from concentrating

We have work to do and it is essential that there are no distractions.

22. rubicund – pink and healthy looking skin usually on cheeks, rosy, ruddy

Her rubicund cheeks and lips were the result of a make-up.

23. saturnine – gloomy, leaden; serious, sad

Heavy saturnine clouds covered the sky.

24. obesity – fatness dangerous for health; **obese** - very fat, stout, fleshy

You could hardly call him simply fat, he was obese, and his obesity was frightening.

25. repulsive – causing strong dislike and fear; unpleasant, disgusting

Nobody liked him because of his repulsive appearance.

26. pretend – to behave so that smb believes that smth is true when it is not

She closed her eyes and pretended to be asleep.

27. faithful (to) – remaining loyal to smb/smth and continuing to support them

He remained faithful to his principles to the last.

– loyal; having no sexual relations with anyone else

I've been faithful to you since we are married.

28. complexion – the color of face

In spite of straight features you could not call her face pretty because of bad complexion.

29. suffer (from) – to feel pain in your body or your mind

She suffered from depression for most of her adult life.

30. fury – a feeling of very strong anger which doesn't last long

She was in such a fury that she could not say a word.

31. be attracted to smb – to interest someone in a romantic or sexual way

She's old enough now to be attracted to boys.

32. jealous – upset because smb you love pays attention to another person

He would dance with other women to make her jealous.

33. equable – even and regular, reasonable unchangeable

John is the best person to work with. He is so calm and equable.

34. accept – to recognize that smth is true (bad) and cannot be changed

I know it's not fair, but you'll just have to accept it.

35. disposition – a general tendency of character, behavior; nature

Mowbray has shown a disposition to take unnecessary risks.

36. rebel (against) smb/smth – to oppose or fight against anyone in power

Many children rebel against school rules.

37. deny – to refuse to accept smth

All three athletes deny taking the drug.

38. accusation – a statement saying that smb has done smth wrong

He denied the accusation, saying he was innocent.

39. accuse (of) – to say that smb has done smth wrong or committed a crime

She claims that her employers accused her of theft.

40. ally – to join, to unite

Why don't we ally and start living together?

41. affect – to have a strong effect or influence smb/smth

She had been deeply affected by her parents' divorce.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. ordinary, medium, mean _____
2. protest, disagree, oppose _____
3. refuse, reject, disclaim _____
4. charge, blame, prosecute _____
5. delay, postpone, keep off, arrest _____
6. join, unite, combine, connect _____
7. even, regular, calm, unchangeable _____
8. take, admit, agree _____
9. useless, lazy, loafing, lounging _____
10. influence, impact _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Jack, don't be _____! Polish your shoes at least.
A. even B. idle C. bitter D. sallow
2. He was _____ and a pessimist and very gay in everyday life.
A. idle B. repulsive C. equable D. nervous
3. He suffered silently and didn't even try to _____ against circumstances.
A. rebel B. ally C. detain D. deny
4. They offered her a job, and she _____ without hesitation.
A. affected B. allied C. accused D. accepted
5. He was _____ by a road accident while he was driving to his office.
A. rebelled B. remade C. detained D. denied
6. Both men have _____ all the accusations.
A. suffered B. denied C. agreed D. pretended
7. Her work as an actress has never been better than _____.
A. jealous B. faithful C. fluent D. average
8. If you agree to _____ with us, we'll help each other, especially in a war.
A. ally B. affect C. accept D. persuade
9. The disease _____ many different organs of the body.
A. complains B. accuses C. affects D. suffers
10. I do not want to _____ him of telling lies.
A. accept B. suffer C. detain D. accuse

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

average	accuse	equable	accept	ally
rebel	detain	affect	idle	deny

1. Even though he was caught near the dead body, he _____ all the accusations.
2. My pleading didn't seem to _____ him at all.
3. Get upstairs and wake up that _____ brother of yours.
4. It's never too cold or too hot here. The climate is rather _____.
5. For a long time, he simply could not _____ that she was dead.
6. Liberal parents often leave their kids nothing to _____ against.
7. They _____ to work together and help each other.
8. The police _____ the man, but soon released him.
9. Her performance in the test was way below _____.
10. The judge asked the _____ men to stand up.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. average | A. afraid | B. alone | C. ordinary | D. heavy |
| 2. equable | A. vast | B. tiny | C. huge | D. calm |
| 3. idle | A. enormous | B. naked | C. obese | D. lazy |
| 4. affect | A. influence | B. interest | C. offer | D. order |
| 5. accept | A. annoy | B. agree | C. prefer | D. bring |
| 6. ally | A. accept | B. affect | C. unite | D. arrive |
| 7. accuse | A. pretend | B. blame | C. combine | D. dine |
| 8. deny | A. reject | B. share | C. persuade | D. confess |
| 9. rebel | A. call | B. protest | C. attract | D. wait |
| 10. detain | A. go on | B. come in | C. keep off | D. set off |

Part 2

1. **piercing** – a very sharp and unpleasant sound, shrill

Her piercing voice always causes earache.

2. **startled** – frightened or surprised by smth unexpected

I was startled to see a face suddenly appear at the window.

3. **swallow** – to make food or drink go down through your throat

She quickly swallowed the rest of her coffee.

4. **gulp** – a quick swallow of a large amount of a drink

The weary driver took another gulp of the water.

5. well – an enclosed space in a building around which stairs turn

Be aware! Don't lean, otherwise you might fall down to the bottom of the stairwell.

6. nightmare – a frightening and unpleasant dream

I still have terrible nightmares about the train crash.

7. soothe – to make smb more calm, more relaxed, less angry

She was so excited, that it was difficult to soothe her.

8. notwithstanding – in spite of, despite

Notwithstanding his love of luxury, his house was simple inside.

9. dwell – to live, to inhabit (also about a feeling, an idea)

We dwelt in a tiny guest house located 2 miles away from the lake.

10. insufferable – unbearable, intolerable; extremely unpleasant or annoying

Although the living conditions were insufferable, we spent there about 2 weeks.

11. incalculable – too great to count or measure

In the museum we could see ancient art works of incalculable value.

12. suspect – to believe that smb has done smth, usually something bad.

He wrote a letter naming the people whom he suspected.

13. evidently – obviously

Voters have evidently lost faith in the government.

14. ashamed – feeling guilty or embarrassed because you have done smth wrong

He's extremely ashamed of his behavior last night.

15. deliberately – purposefully, intentionally, thoroughly

I didn't mean to offend you deliberately.

16. exasperated – extremely annoyed and impatient

It took me plenty of time to get there, and I was really exasperated to find nobody at home.

17. swear – to promise by an oath

I've never seen him before – I swear!

18. shriek – a short, loud, high cry produced as an expression of powerful emotions

With a shriek of delight, she threw herself into the water.

19. thud – a dull sound caused by a heavy object striking smth soft

Suddenly we heard a shriek, and a moment later – a dull thud as if a body struck the ground.

20. shiver – to shake because of cold, fear, surprise

She shivered with fear at the thought of seeing him again.

21. wipe – to remove liquid, dirt with a handkerchief or a hand

I wiped the sweat away from my forehead.

22. lodger – someone who pays to live in smb's house

When I studied at the college I had to share a room with two other lodgers.

23. malicious – intended to do smb harm caused by hatred

She gave me a malicious look, and I realized that I shouldn't trust her.

24. sparkle – to shine with small points of reflected light

Bits of broken glass sparkled in the sunlight.

25. veiled – hidden, expresses indirectly

I heard a veiled threat in his voice.

26. shovel – to put food into one's mouth (with gusto), enjoying meal

He started to shovel everything from the table because he was very hungry.

27. sluggish – slow moving, unhurried, leisurely

Our tour guide was a passive, sluggish fellow, therefore we didn't see many sights.

28. sardonic – scornful, mocking, showing a lack of respect

His sardonic smile was suspicious, and I thought that he had shown us the wrong direction.

29. jest – to joke, to speak in a way that is not serious

Their manner to jest about her wearing the outrageous clothes irritated her a lot.

30. expense – an amount of money you spend in order to buy or do something

A powerful computer is worth the expense if you use it regularly.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. shocked, surprised, frightened, taken aback | _____ |
| 2. slow, unhurried, passive, leisurely | _____ |
| 3. wicked, malignant, unkind, ill-meaning | _____ |
| 4. purposefully, intentionally, thoroughly | _____ |
| 5. live, inhabit, lodge, settle | _____ |
| 6. remove, clean, dust, dry | _____ |
| 7. tremble, shake, shudder | _____ |
| 8. shine, flicker, beam, twinkle, flash | _____ |

9. calm, compose, relax, quiet
10. mistrust, doubt, disbelieve

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Sometimes crazy ideas _____ in humans' minds.
A. enter B. dwell C. occur D. offer
2. She was doing her best to _____ the crying baby.
A. shine B. remove C. accuse D. soothe
3. Her eyes _____ with excitement.
A. hurried B. sparkled C. swore D. relaxed
4. Sasha woke up feeling tired and _____ .
A. jovial B. relaxed C. sluggish D. quick
5. You did that _____ , just to annoy me.
A. dramatically B. faithfully C. deliberately D. extraordinary
6. _____ your hands before touching food!
A. Wipe B. Wait C. Wake D. Wear
7. Police _____ that she had some connection with the robbery.
A. suspected B. suffered C. dwelt D. shrugged
8. We stood _____ in the icy wind.
A. rebelling B. denying C. shivering D. pretending
9. She got _____ when I told her the news.
A. startled B. fluent C. average D. equable
10. His _____ attitude towards her seemed strange and unnatural.
A. exasperated B. malicious C. idle D. obese

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

startled	sluggish	shiver	sparkle	suspect
soothe	wipe	malicious	dwelt	deliberately

1. The news wasn't enough to _____ the nerves of the high-street banks.
2. Police believe the fire was started _____ .
3. He was a kind person, but pretended to be _____ .
4. The idea of the negative aspects of his performance _____ in his mind.
5. I _____ Alex of deliberately forgetting her purse.
6. His _____ walk betrayed a man who was never in a hurry making decisions.
7. The child was looking at me with huge _____ eyes.
8. The waiter _____ the table with a towel and put a dish of fish.

9. Stop _____ ! I am not going to hurt you.

10. Her eyes were _____ with joy.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1 1. | 2 A. unkind | 3 B. obese | 4 C. jovial | 5 D. shining |
| malicious | | | | |
| 6 2. sluggish | 7 A. terrible | 8 B. slow | 9 C. rapid | 10 D. crazy |
| 11 3. startled | 12 A. | 13 B. | 14 C. | 15 D. |
| | suffering | acrimonious | frightened | enormous |
| 16 4. | 17 A. | 18 B. | 19 C. evidently | 20 D. lazily |
| deliberately | obviously | intentionally | | |
| 21 5. soothe | 22 A. bite | 23 B. occur | 24 C. upset | 25 D. calm |
| 26 6. dwelt | 27 A. live | 28 B. arrive | 29 C. teach | 30 D. murder |
| 31 7. wipe | 32 A. swear | 33 B. awake | 34 C. make | 35 D. dry |
| 36 8. sparkle | 37 A. shine | 38 B. look | 39 C. swallow | 40 D. jest |
| 41 9. shiver | 42 A. catch | 43 B. bring | 44 C. shudder | 45 D. suffer |
| 46 10. suspect | 47 A. accept | 48 B. mistrust | 49 C. affect | 50 D. relax |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. **get into** — to start participating in smth

In the train I shared a compartment with a man and soon we got into conversation.

2. **give away** — to make someone a present of smth

She gave away all her money to the poor.

3. **refer to** — to mention smth/smb when you are speaking or writing

She referred to the subject several times during her speech.

4. **run away** — to escape by running

They say that his wife has run away with a lover.

5. **rid of** — to make free of smb/smth

He left at last, and I was glad to rid of such an unwanted guest.

6. **pour out** — to make the liquid flow from a container to a cup

There was still some wine in the bottle and he poured it out into our glasses.

7. fall upon (on) – to attack eagerly (fig)

The hungry children fell upon the food.

8. keep off – to retain, to delay

He was late for the appointment because of the traffic jam that kept him off.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. run away | a. delay |
| 2. get into | b. attack eagerly |
| 3. give away smth to smb | c. mention |
| 4. pour out | d. start talking |
| 5. rid of | e. fill glasses |
| 6. keep off | f. free of something unwanted |
| 7. fall upon | g. make a present |
| 8. refer to | h. escape |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. I can't believe my ears that it is possible to escape from this place.
2. The hostess made milk flow from the jug into our cups and we drank it with pleasure.
3. I wish you to make free of your bad habits.
4. Don't start conversation with strangers.
5. We decided to make poor children a present of the toys.
6. The flight was delayed, as a result we arrived 3 hours later than it was scheduled.
7. The enemy attacked us at night.
8. Jack was careful not to mention the woman by name.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. You shouldn't _____ meat, as if you are a wild animal.
2. He _____ at the very start.
3. _____ the shirts that I don't wear to the nephews.

4. Don't _____ the wine until I wipe the glasses.
5. What _____ you _____ yesterday? You were half an hour late for the reception.
6. We swore to do everything in order to _____ our country _____ the invaders.
7. Suddenly she hit him and _____.
8. What information did the speaker _____ in his report?

C. I d i o m s

1. **for one's sake; for the sake of smth** – for the benefit or good of smb or smth

I'm not just doing this for my own sake, you know.

2. **good deal** – a large amount or quantity of something

A good deal of research has been done already.

3. **be on friendly terms** – to get on well with smb

No one wanted to be on friendly terms with him because of his loquaciousness.

4. **get (have) a square meal** – to eat a good satisfying food

Children should have three square meals a day.

5. **keep a straight face** – to continue to be serious

It was difficult to keep a straight face when he fell over the pig.

6. **catch (take) hold of smb (smth)** – to seize, to grab

He caught hold of the rope, and we pulled him up.

7. **make up one's mind** – to decide

I didn't want to go there alone, so I made up my mind to ask my cousin to join me.

8. **put smth out of one's mind** – to forget, to stop thinking of smth

He tried to put the thought of taking revenge out of his mind.

9. burst into tears/ laughter – to start crying or laughing suddenly

Hearing her accusations he burst into laughter and said that it was nonsense.

10. do one's best - to try as hard as you can

I'm not sure if I can win this race, but I'll do my best.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

catch hold of	for the sake of	do one's best	make up one's mind	put out of one's mind
a good deal	burst into tears	on friendly terms	get a square meal	keep a straight face

1. _____ my hand and I'll help you to get out of the window.
2. Terry is a very sensitive girl and she easily _____ for no reason.
3. I don't know if I can finish the whole job in one day, but I'll _____.
4. After looking through some leaflets offering various destinations I _____ to spend an exciting holiday in the Alps.
5. _____ – that is all I'm dreaming of now, because I haven't eaten since yesterday's night.
6. The regulation is not just for the protection of the workers, but also _____ the whole community.
7. We were sure that the husband and wife were _____ with each other, because no one could see them quarrelling.
8. Helen could hardly _____ when her husband confessed that he hadn't slept three nights trying not to miss the train going in the wrong direction.
9. I couldn't forget that air crash, especially _____ the shrieks of the injured passengers _____.
10. I spend a _____ of money on your studies at college.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. Traveling by water _____ a favorable impression on people with nervous disposition.
2. I am not sure if I can win the race, but I'll _____ my best.
3. Don't tell anybody about my occupation just to _____ necessary caution.

4. Al's wife is good at _____ him scenes, especially in his friends' presence.
5. Do you remember Freddy who was forever _____ jokes at Dr. Goldsmith's lectures?
6. Just put your dirty clothes into it, press the button, and the thing is _____.
7. Some trouble with my studies _____ it necessary for me to burn midnight light.
8. She pays him \$25 a day for his presence only; it's even more than she can _____.

D. WORD STUDY

AFRAID ▪ FRIGHTENED ▪ SCARED ▪ TERRIFIED

1. **afraid** – feeling fear, worry, anxiety about a possible result

There's nothing to be afraid of.

2. **frightened** – feeling nervous because of smth very unpleasant going to happen

Don't be frightened, it's only thunder.

3. **scared** – frightened especially because you are in a dangerous situation

The first time I went on a motorcycle I was really scared

4. **terrified** – extremely frightened of smth dangerous or unpleasant

We ran out of the house, too terrified to look back.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. A fire broke out at the school but teachers were able to lead the _____ children to safety.
2. Everyone in our class was _____ of Mr. Walsh
3. Don't be _____ to ask for help if you need it.
4. You'll never persuade Ian to climb up there! He's _____ of heights.
5. I didn't mention it because I was _____ of upsetting him.
6. She is _____, she has already lost her child to the disease and fears it may happen again.
7. I'm _____ he'll have a heart attack and die.

8. Are you _____ of snakes?
9. I didn't tell my parents I was pregnant. I was _____ that they would throw me out of the house.
10. Martha asked me to come because she was _____ of going there on her own.

ARRIVE IN / AT ▪ REACH ▪ GET TO

1. arrive in/at – to reach a place, especially at the end of a journey

We arrived at the station 5 minutes late. They will arrive in New York at noon.

2. reach – to go as far as a place is located

It was dark by the time I reached their house.

3. get to – to be able to reach smth, especially when you tired or physically unfit

She had fallen and broken her ankle and couldn't get to the phone when it rang.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. When does their plane _____?
2. If I were not so tired, I could _____ to the place much earlier.
3. It took three days for the letter to _____ me.
4. I _____ at the hotel late at night.
5. It was 4 a.m. when we _____ in Tokyo.
6. Although I was badly injured I managed to _____ to the door and call for help.
7. There was no boat nearby, so he couldn't _____ the opposite bank of the river.
8. Do you know how to _____ to the nearest gas station?

▪ GIVE ▪

1. give away – to make someone a present

She gave away all her money to the poor.

to tell information or facts that you should keep secret

If captured, they might give away vital military secrets.

to show an emotion or quality that you are trying to hide

Her face gave nothing away.

2. give in – to yield, to concede, to surrender

The boys fought until one gave in.

to deliver, to hand in

Give your examination papers in to me as soon as you've finished.

3. give out – to run out, to come to an end; to stop working (infml)

Their water gave out two days ago.

to distribute

Give out examination papers.

make known, announce (about information that is broadcast)

Details of the accident were given out on the nine o'clock news.

4. give up – to stop doing/trying

I gave that idea up a long time ago.

let smb have smth,

Give your seat up to the old lady.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. I wish you would give _____ telling a lie.
2. They often quarreled, but it was Sheila who always gave _____ first.
3. I'm afraid water is giving _____. Take the bucket and bring some more.
4. They painted their faces in bright colors, so that when they turned pale with fear, it couldn't give them _____ to the enemies.
5. The hotel was full. I would have waited till the morning to check in if one of the guests hadn't given his double room _____ to me. It was so kind of him.
6. What should I do with the Customs Form? - Give it _____ to that officer over there by the gate.
7. Would you like a cigarette? - No, thanks. I've given _____ smoking.
8. Give the sweets _____ to the children.
9. Our team just gave the match _____ by playing so badly.
10. All radio stations of the world gave _____ the same announcement every ten minutes.

E. R E V I S I O N

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Lisa whirled round _____, at the sound of Vass's voice.

- A. accused B. startled C. equable D. acrimonious
2. Police believe the fire was started _____.
- A. evidently B. jovially C. scarcely D. deliberately
3. The government explains low salaries by the _____ economic growth.
- A. passionate B. sluggish C. repulsive D. obese
4. We'll need to _____ if you want to succeed in your work.
- A. ally B. shake C. affect D. shiver
5. The area has been badly _____ by pollution.
- A. accused B. surprised C. affected D. rejected
6. Sam _____ her explanation without question.
- A. brought B. accepted C. affected D. accused
7. She was dreaming of _____ somewhere in the countryside in a tiny cottage.
- A. traveling B. rebelling C. pretending D. dwelling
8. She often _____ him of being unfaithful to her.
- A. accused B. justified C. denied D. confessed
9. The _____ child spends around ten hours a week watching television.
- A. veiled B. stout C. enormous D. average
10. This country will not remain _____ if its friends are attacked.
- A. even B. idle C. busy D. crazy
11. Ms Dawson has been _____, so we will start the meeting without her.
- A. swallowed B. awaken C. detained D. remained
12. I'm _____. I'll fail all my exams.
- A. pleased B. interested C. startled D. scared
13. What time does your plane _____ ?
- A. come B. deny C. arrive D. ally
14. When parents argue constantly, it's the children who _____ most.
- A. shovel B. jest C. shiver D. suffer
15. Bits of broken glass _____ in the sunlight
- A. lost B. sparkled C. referred D. preferred
16. Officials have repeatedly _____ the existence of a secret report.
- A. believed B. denied C. allied D. replied
17. He wrote a letter naming the people whom he _____.
- A. suspected B. dwelt C. swore D. translated
18. Did you _____ all the information from the computer disk?
- A. steal B. calm C. soothe D. wipe
19. When senior army officers _____, the President was forced to leave the country.

A. confessed B. accused C. rebelled D. pretended
 20. The news wasn't enough to _____ the nerves of the high-street banks.

A. suspect B. soothe C. engage D. miss

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

jealous	rebellious	deliberately	malicious	suspect
detain	frightened	arrived	idle	get
accuse	terrified	scared	reach	average

- The people in the study lost an _____ of six pounds each.
- "What do you _____ me of?", the detained passenger asked.
- It's no use _____ against nature.
- Many people feel _____ of their spouses, but very few are able to murder their rivals.
- Nine people were treated in hospital and one was _____ overnight.
- Nobody _____ that you are guilty; we believe in your innocence.
- By an extraordinary coincidence we happened to _____ at the same resort.
- Don't even try to seem _____. I know you have a heart of gold, indeed.
- Don't worry. I have not been _____ while you were away.
- I dropped in at the Travel Agency _____ to pick up a few leaflets describing some attractive destinations.
- Do you know how I can _____ Rochester by bus or by train?
- She was _____ extremely by her nightmare.
- We are _____ that there may be another earthquake.
- I was _____ at the very thought of spending the whole night there alone.
- Can you tell me how to _____ to the National Gallery?

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. average | A. attractive | B. passionate | C. medium | D. cultivated |
| 2. deliberately | A. faithfully | B. purposefully | C. gladly | D. frankly |
| 3. detain | A. keep off | B. set out | C. give out | D. remain |
| 4. malicious | A. cruel | B. loquacious | C. tiny | D. kind |
| 5. accept | A. agree | B. ally | C. joke | D. affect |
| 6. affect | A. promise | B. admit | C. influence | D. prefer |
| 7. equable | A. bitter | B. difficult | C. huge | D. calm |

8. sluggish	A. piercing	B. disgusting	C. quick	D. slow
9. startled	A. surprised	B. obese	C. huge	D. tiny
10. soothe	A. settle	B. compose	C. upset	D. accuse
11. dwell	A. suspect	B. release	C. lodge	D. catch
12. wipe	A. live	B. dine	C. hope	D. remove
13. frightened	A. terrified	B. reassuring	C. bored	D. brushed
14. suspect	A. accept	B. occur	C. disbelieve	D. distract
15. ally	A. jest	B. join	C. enjoy	D. refer
16. accuse	A. persuade	B. insist	C. rid	D. blame
17. sparkle	A. shine	B. remove	C. protest	D. pour
18. rebel	A. keep	B. fall	C. disagree	D. wipe

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to the boldfaces word.

1. average	A. extraordinary	B. disgusting	C. abominable	D. fearful
2. idle	A. vast	B. engaged	C. obliged	D. useful
3. equable	A. jovial	B. famous	C. nervous	D. sallow
4. jovial	A. sociable	B. friendly	C. happy	D. gloomy
5. sluggish	A. slow	B. quiet	C. quick	D. calm
6. accuse	A. charge	B. justify	C. insist	D. afford
7. deliberately	A. small	B. pretty	C. accidentally	D. just
8. accept	A. deny	B. agree	C. admit	D. prepare
9. soothe	A. compose	B. jest	C. upset	D. ally
10. malicious	A. biting	B. kind	C. evil	D. even
11. deny	A. object	B. reject	C. confess	D. release
12. arrive	A. depart	B. accept	C. affect	D. enter

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

- Will you help me to _____ the tea.
- According to his will all his money were _____ to the paupers.
- Don't try to _____ me. I'll follow you wherever you go.
- He promised to be at five. I don't know what could _____ him.
- Three men _____ him and hit him on the head.
- When I was 13, I _____ from home.
- She tried to keep a straight face, but her shaking hands _____ her.
- Look, gas is _____.

9. We were not going to _____, notwithstanding the fact that our competitors were much stronger.
10. As a rule, American parents _____ supporting their grown-up children financially.
11. I entered the classroom when the teacher was _____ test papers to the students.
12. It is appropriate to _____ seats in public transport to aged people.
13. How many invitation cards have you _____?
14. People traveling by train make acquaintance with each other _____ and _____ conversation rather easily.
15. Changed the channel! Let's see what they are _____ on the other news programs.
16. His heart finally _____ under the strain.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

make scenes

make up our minds

square meal

burst into laughter

for the sake of

out of her mind

make impression

do my best

catch hold of

keep a straight face

make it clear

be on friendly terms

be taken aback

make caution

1. While traveling you should _____, for instance, never keep all your money in one place.
2. What a terrible disposition you have! You are constantly _____.
3. I try to _____ not to annoy you.
4. He was very exasperated; nevertheless he tried to _____.
5. She couldn't put his silly joke _____.
6. We could get an inexpensive _____ in that outdoor cafe.
7. We were so hungry that we _____ to find a Chinese restaurant.
8. The story he told was so funny that everyone _____.
9. During a long voyage it is not easy to _____ with people who you share a cabin with on board a ship.
10. I was _____ when I heard the news about my namesake's death.
11. I'd like to _____, that we shouldn't pretend any longer.
12. What _____ did the story _____ you?

13. I hope you're not doing this just _____ the money.
 14. She _____ his arm and pulled him back.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-, im-, il-, un-, ir-, dis-*.

_____ decent	_____ possible	_____ legal
_____ faithful	_____ sufferable	_____ literate
_____ cultivated	_____ even	_____ tolerable
_____ regular	_____ calculable	_____ honest

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

- I will never agree. It is a(n) _____ offer.
- His speech betrayed him as a(n) _____ person.
- I refuse to work _____ hours and weekends.
- It was almost _____ to attract the attention of a waiter.
- The benefit to the local economy would be _____.
- His teeth were yellow and _____.
- He spent three sleepless nights because of a(n) _____ pain.
- What makes loving brides grow into _____ wives?
- Government reduced expenses on education; as a result, lots of children remained _____.
- It's _____ to drive without license.
- The girl isn't _____, she has a very creative imagination.
- The noise outside is making our lives _____.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

- _____ the time we arrived, the other guests had been already there.
- He tends to dress _____ dark colors.
- He was a teacher _____ profession.
- The date and time are shown _____ the bottom of your screen.
- He expected to start _____ a week.
- I'm having some trouble _____ this new software.
- They have been married _____ about 30 years.
- _____ one occasion we had to walk all the way home.

9. Mark will be in charge of correspondence _____ Steve's absence.
10. As a serious candidate, you want to make a good impression _____ everyone you meet.
11. _____ the way home we saw a terrible car accident.
12. Their incomes are far _____ the average.
13. _____ coincidence, his teaching contract finished at about the same time his first book was published.
14. _____ this particular moment in time it is difficult for us to raise money.
15. We were supposed to provide safety equipment _____ our own expense.
16. He snatched her glass of rum and drank it _____ a gulp.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Shall we start eating, or should we wait _____ the others?
2. Susannah looked _____ herself in the mirror.
3. She had been faithful _____ her husband for many years until she met John.
4. We are sure that the men suspected _____ involvement in the bombing will be found.
5. The region continues to suffer _____ serious pollution.
6. Jack was careful not to refer _____ the woman by name.
7. It was after midnight when we arrived _____ the hotel.
8. They accused him _____ kidnapping.
9. It was useless to rebel _____ circumstances.
10. He seemed not to be ashamed _____ his abominable behavior.
11. Nick confessed _____ being a secret opera fan.
12. She's old enough now to be attracted _____ boys.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. Your aunt is too old _____ (live) alone.
2. She denied _____ (know) anything.
3. It was impossible _____ (attract) the attention of the audience.
4. I suggest _____ (have) lunch first.
5. She thought that I was trying _____ (hug) her.
6. She didn't know how _____ (persuade) them.

7. She couldn't help _____ (think) of her children.
8. He did his best _____ (book) theater tickets.
9. It is not fair to expect me _____ (do) all the housework.
10. I spent the whole evening _____ (watch) movies.
11. He offered to help me repair my car if I agree _____ (join) them.
12. I am ashamed _____ (behave) like that.
13. _____ (play) cards was the only thing that interested him.
14. He's considering _____ (buy) a used car.
15. He invited me _____ (share) bed and breakfast with him.
16. It was time for us _____ (go) home.
17. I don't mind _____ (go) if no one else wants to.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *say* or *tell*.

1. I am going to _____ a few words before you start.
2. Could you _____ me the time, please?
3. He _____ that he didn't know what to do.
4. Did he _____ who called?
5. Can you _____ anything about cricket?
6. My grandfather used to _____ very funny stories.
7. My watch _____ it's 5 p.m.
8. She didn't want to _____ neither a lie, nor truth.
9. He _____ goodbye and left for school.
10. I think I met her in 1985, but I can't _____ for certain.
11. He _____ he was going on a trip
12. She said she'd had her hair cut, but I couldn't _____ the difference.

7. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. "I can't stand this boy", she said.

-
2. "I'm having a nice time", she said.
-

3. "I'll wait until you come back", she said.

4. "I've booked my summer holiday", he said.

5. "Will you come with me?" I asked.

6. "What did the doctor tell you?" he asked

7. "When can I have a pay rise?" he said.

8. "I've been waiting for you all morning," he said.

9. "I failed my driving test," he said.

10. "I am William Franklin, a lawyer", he said.

11. "I'll be working in Paris next year", he said.

12. "When I woke up the room was full of smoke", he said.

13. "Where can I find him?" she asked.

14. "Shall I wrap it for you?" the assistant said.

15. "Have you eaten your lunch yet? Mom asked.

16. "You mustn't do it today", he said.

8. Rewrite the sentences using the words in the box.

threaten	deny	wonder	warn	claim	exclaim
accuse	want to know	remind	suggest	insist	boast

1. "Where shall I take her a present from?" he asked himself.

2. "Why is she so unhappy?" he asked.

3. "Slow down or I'll get out of the car", she said.

4. "Don't believe everything she says", he said.

5. "I didn't lose the tickets", he said.

6. "You must let me help you", he said.

7. "Let's go to the park!" she said.

8. "What a horrible color!" she said loudly.

9. "Don't forget to mail the letters", he said.

10. "I've never seen her before", he said.

11. "You always lied to me", he said.

12. "I could read and write when I was three", she said.

9. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. "I'd like you to help me with the report, please", Molly said.

2. "Don't hurry!" I said.

3. He asked, "Do you think you could lend me your video camera for a week?"

4. "Turn around slowly!" he said.

5. "Could we speak to the manager, please?" said the two men.

6. "When the bell rings take the meat out of the oven", my sister said.

7. "Would you mind helping me with these dishes?" asked the hostess.

8. "Put it back right now!" he said.

10. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. *While/In contrast to* many Americans drive every day, people in my country use public transport.
2. *Unlike/whereas* the average American, people in Brazil don't use credit cards very often.
3. I am very similar *to/similarly to* the average American, except I don't have a car.
4. The Hawaii and the Canaries are very similar in the way that they are *both/like* popular tourist destinations.
5. Young men all over the world do not wear ties *unlike/except for* special occasions.
6. *In contrast to/except* the average American, people in China have large families.
7. You are very similar to my brother *except/unlike* he exercises only once or twice a week.
8. *Unlike/Whereas* Jim, Jack always speaks what he thinks.
9. Surveys show that *like /both* men most women work because of necessity.
10. *Like/While* most people look forward to retirement, some cannot bear the thought.

10. Join the ideas using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. Santa Fe is a beautiful tourist town with remarkable climate. It is a center for American Indian culture. (*Besides /But*).
-
-

2. At 2p.m. many stores and offices close for siesta. Some businesses stay open from 9 to 5 o'clock. (*moreover/ though*).
-
-

3. Many Madrilenos eat dinner late, usually between 10 p.m. and midnight. People throughout Spain do the same. (*Like/In addition*)
-
-

4. Some people entertain themselves by visiting world-famous art museums. The majority prefers shopping. (*moreover/ while*)

5. I enjoyed my trip to San-Francisco. It rained the first couple of days. (*although / also*)

6. The buses don't run regularly. The subway is considered very convenient if you want to reach the place you need easily (*so that/whereas*)

7. You can easily check-in in one of many luxurious hotels in Cairo. You should make reservations ahead of time in Istanbul, because the hotels are generally full (*in contrast to/as a result*).

8. She went to Spain. The doctor had told her to rest (*unlike/despite*).

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

1. What was the Russian man like?
2. What was his occupation?
3. What kind of person was the Russian man's wife?
4. How did they get along with each other?
5. What was the husband's reaction towards his wife's scenes?
6. What scared the woman one night?
7. Was the man at home when his wife died?
8. How did she die?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

1. Why did the Russian man start telling the author his life story?

2. What business might have detained the man in Vladivostok?
3. What kind of trouble with the authorities might he have had?
4. Can you believe that the Russian man's wife loved him to distraction?
5. How did the woman's behavior change after she had had the dream?
6. What ideas entered the man's mind after his wife's dream?
7. Could the woman have remained alive if her husband hadn't been away?
8. Do you believe in the man's innocence? Why?
9. Do you think the man was charged with murder?
10. What do you think might really have happened to the man's wife?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Contrast and compare the Russian man and his wife, using linking words (similarly..., similar to ..., like ..., in contrast to..., unlike..., while..., whereas...)

	He	She
1 Nationality and origin	Russian, of noble birth	Swiss, native of Geneva, French was her native tongue
2 Education, social status and occupation	A man of education, good and fluent English	Cultivated, spoke five languages, ...
3 Appearance		
4. Hobbies, habits, views		

--	--	--

2. Make a chart and list each character qualities /habits. Then give examples of their behavior.

Character	Qualities/Habits	Behavior
The Russian man	communicative	He got into conversation with the author; often spent time with his friends
	loquacious	Unasked, told a good deal about himself
The Russian man's wife	jealous	
	acrimonious	

3. Think of some examples of cause-and-effect relationship in this story. Then complete the following chart.

Cause	Effect
1.The writer shared a table at the station restaurant with a man	1.
2. Tried to conceal his baldness	2.
3.She was a woman who suffered from a fury of possession	3.
4.	4.She was much shaken
5.	5. She became less bitter and more tolerant
6. He was spending an evening with a friend of his	6.

D. S H A R I N G I D E A S

1. Discuss the relationships between the Russian man and his wife. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
2. There is a saying “A stranger’s heart is a deep well – it’s too dark there to see well. How does it apply to the story you have read?
3. Be divided into 2 groups: one supporting the idea that the Russian man is guilty of murdering his wife, another – supporting his innocence. Give examples from the story.
4. Express your opinion what might really have happened to the woman.

E. W R I T I N G

1. Compare and contrast the Russian man and his wife in. appearance, social status, education, occupation
2. Compare and contrast the characters’ interests and behavior.
3. Create a conversation between the Russian man and his wife after she has had a nightmare.
4. Pretend you are the Russian man’s wife. Write a sincere letter to your relatives in Switzerland about your life and your plans.
5. Pretend that you are the Russian man, the lawyer by profession. Compose your defense speech explaining your wife’s death.
6. Write a police report describing the crime scene.
7. Imagine that you are a detective. What questions would you ask the Russian man to find out whether he is guilty or innocent?

UNIT 6

The Chimera

J.Cheever

PART 1

My wife is a big woman. She is one of the five daughters of Colonel Boysen, a Georgia politician. He went to the White House seven times, and my wife has a heart-shaped pillow embroidered with the word LOVE that was either the work of Mrs. Coolidge or was at one time in her possession. My wife and I are terribly unhappy together, but we have three beautiful children, and we try to keep things going. I do what I have to do, like everyone else, and one of the things I have to do is to serve my wife breakfast in bed. I try to fix her a nice breakfast, because this sometimes improves her disposition, which is generally terrible. One morning not long ago, when I brought her a tray she clapped her hands to her face and began to cry. I looked at the tray to see if there was anything wrong. It was a nice breakfast: two hard-boiled eggs, a piece of Danish, and a Coca-Cola spiked with gin. That's what she likes. I've never learned to cook bacon. The eggs looked all right and the dishes were clean, so I asked her what was the matter. She lifted her hands from her eyes — her face was wet with tears and her eyes were haggard— and said, "I cannot any longer endure being served breakfast in bed by a hairy male in his underwear." I took a shower and dressed and went to work, but when I came home that night I could see that things were no better; she was still offended by my appearance that morning.

We had hamburger that night, and I noticed that Zena didn't seem to have any appetite. The children ate heartily, but as soon as they were through — perhaps they sensed a quarrel — slipped off into the television room to watch the quarrels there. They were right about the quarrel. Zena began it.

"You're so inconsiderate," she thundered. "You never think of me."

"I'm sorry, darling," I said. "Wasn't the hamburger done?" She was drinking straight gin, and I didn't want a quarrel. "It wasn't the hamburger — I'm used to the garbage you cook. What I have for dinner is no longer of any importance to me. I've learned to get along with what I'm served. It's just that your whole attitude is so inconsiderate."

"What have I done, darling?" I always call her darling, hoping that she may come around.

"What have you done?" What have you done?" Her voice rose, and her face got red, and she got to her feet and, standing above me, she screamed, "You've ruined my life that's what you've done."

"I don't see how I've ruined your life," I said. "I guess you're disappointed — lots of people are — but I don't think it's fair to blame it all on your marriage. There are lots of things I wanted to do — I wanted to climb the Matterhorn — but I wouldn't blame the fact that I haven't on anyone else."

"That's the trouble with you. You never think of me. You never think of what I might have done. You've ruined my life!" Then she went upstairs to her bedroom and locked the door.

Her disappointment was painfully real, I knew, although I thought I had given her everything I had promised. The false promises, the ones whose fulfillment made her so miserable, must have been made by Colonel Boysen, but he was dead. None of her sisters was happily married, and how disastrously unhappy they had been had never struck me until that night. I mean, I had never put it together. Lila, the oldest, had lost her husband while they were taking a stroll on a high cliff above the Hudson. The police had questioned her, and the whole family, including me, had been indignant about their suspiciousness, but mightn't she have given him a little push? Stella, the next oldest, had married an alcoholic, who systematically drank himself out of the picture. But Stella had been capricious and unfaithful, and mightn't her conduct have hastened his death? Jessica's husband had been drowned mysteriously in Lake George when they had stopped at a motel and gone for a night swim. And Laura's husband had been killed in a freak automobile accident, while Laura was at

the wheel. Were they murderesses, I wondered – had I married into a family of incorrigible murderesses? Was Zena's disappointment at not being a congresswoman powerful enough to bring her to plot my death? I didn't think so. I seemed much less afraid for my life than to need tenderness, love, loving, good cheer – all the splendid and decent things I knew to be possible in the world.

That night, when I was washing the dishes, I heard Zena speak to me from the kitchen door. I turned and saw her standing there, holding my straight razor. (I have a heavy beard and shave with a straight-edged razor.) "You'd better not leave things like this lying around," she shouted. "If you know what's good for you, you'd better not leave things like this lying around. There are plenty of women in the world who would cut you to ribbons for what I've endured..." I wasn't afraid. What did I feel? I don't know. Bewilderment, crushing bewilderment, and some strange tenderness for poor Zena.

She went upstairs, and I went on washing the dishes and wondering if scenes like this were common on the street where I live. But God, oh God, how much then I wanted some kind of loveliness, softness, gentleness, humor, sweetness, and kindness. And when the dishes were done, I went out of the house, out of the back door.

PART 2

There was music in the air — there always is — and it heightened my desire to see a beautiful woman. Then a sudden wind sprang up, a rain wind, and the smell of a deep forest — although there are no forests in my part of the world — mushroomed among the yards. The smell excited me, and I remembered what it was like to feel young and happy, wearing a sweater and clean cotton pants, and walking through the cool halls of the house where I was raised.

There was the music of a waltz from the Livermores' television set. It must have been a commercial for deodorants, girdles, or ladies' razors; the air was so graceful and so somber. Then, as the music faded – the forest smell was still sharp in the air – I saw her walk up the grass, and she stepped into my arms.

Her name was Olga. I can't change her name any more than I can change her other attributes. She was nothing, I know, but an idle reverie. I've never fooled myself about this. I've imagined that I've won the daily double, climbed the Matterhorn, and sailed, first class, for Europe, and I suppose I imagined Olga out of the same need for escape or tenderness, but, unlike any other reverie, I've ever known, she came with a dossier of facts. She was beautiful, of course. Who, under the circumstances, would invent a shrew, a harridan? Her hair was dark, fragrant, and straight. Her face was oval; her skin was olive-colored, although I could hardly make out her features in the dusk. She had just come from California on the train. She had come not to help me but to ask my help. She needed protection from her husband, who was threatening to follow her. She needed love, strength, and counsel. I held her in my arms, basking in the grace and warmth of her presence. She cried when she spoke of her husband, and I knew what he looked like. I can see him now. He was an army sergeant. There were scars on his thick neck, left from an attack of boils. His face was red. His hair was yellow. He wore a double row of campaign ribbons on a skintight uniform. His breath smelled of rye and toothpaste. I was so delighted by her company, her dependence that I wondered – not at all seriously – if I wasn't missing a stitch. Was there such hidden balance and clemency in the universe that our needs were always requited? Then it began to rain. It was time for her to go, but we took such a long, sweet hour to say good-bye that when I went back in to the kitchen I was wet through to the skin.

On Wednesday night I always take my wife to the Chinese restaurant in the village, and then we go to the movies. As soon as I stepped into the restaurant that night, I thought I would see Olga. I hadn't known that she would return — I hadn't thought about it – but since I've seen the summit of the Matterhorn in my dreams much more than once, mightn't she reappear? I felt happy and expectant. I was glad that I had on my new suit and had remembered to get a haircut. I wanted her to see me at my best, had appeared in that rainy night. Then I noticed that the Muzak was

playing the same somber and graceful waltz that I had heard coming from the Livermores' television, and I thought that perhaps this was no more than a deception of the music— some simple turn of memory that had fooled me as I had been fooled by the smell of the rain into thinking that I was young.

There was no Olga. I had no consolation. Then I felt desperate, desolate, crushed. I noticed how Zena smacked her lips and gave me a challenging glare, as if she was daring me to touch the shrimp fooyong. But I wanted Olga, and the force of seemed to reestablish her reality. How could my need anything I desired so ardently be unreal? The music was only a coincidence. I straightened up again and looked around the place cheerfully, expecting her to come in at any minute, but she never did.

I didn't think she would be at the movies – I knew she didn't like movies – but I still had the feeling that I would see her that night. After my wife went to bed I sat on the edge of the bathtub reading the newspaper. My wife doesn't like me to sit in the kitchen or the living room, so I read in the bathroom, where the light is bright. I was reading when Olga came in. There was no waltz music, no rain, nothing that could account for her presence, excepting my loneliness. "Oh my darling," I said, "I thought you were going to meet me at the restaurant". She said something about not wanting to be seen by my wife. Then she sat down beside me on the bathtub, I put my arms around her, and we talked about her plans. She was looking for an apartment. She was then living in a cheap hotel, and she was having trouble finding a job. "It's too bad you can't type and take shorthand," I remember telling her. "It might almost be worthwhile going to school.... I'll look around and see if I can find anything. Sometimes there's an opening for a receptionist... You could do that, couldn't you? I won't let you be a hat-check girl or a restaurant hostess. No, I won't let you. I'd rather pay your salary until something better comes along...."

My wife threw open the bathroom door. "You're talking to yourself," she thundered. "You can be heard all over the neighborhood. They'll think you're nuts. And you woke me up. You woke me out of a sound sleep, and you know that if my first sleep is interrupted I can't ever get to sleep again." She went to the medicine

cabinet and took a sleeping pill. "If you want to talk to yourself," she said, "go on up to the attic." She went into her bedroom and locked the door.

PART 3

A few nights later, when I was cooking some hamburgers in the back yard, I saw what looked to be some rain clouds rising in the south. I thought this was a good sign. I wanted some news of Olga. After I had washed the dishes I went out onto the back porch and waited. My neighbors were on the porch, and I wondered were they waiting as I was for a chimera. For a minute I wanted terribly to confide in someone. Then the waltz began to play, and just as the music faded she ran up the steps.

Oh, she was very happy that night! She had a job. I knew all about this, because I'd found the job for her. She was working as a receptionist in the same building where I worked. What I didn't know was that she had found an apartment – not a real apartment but a furnished room with a kitchen and bath of her own. This was just as well, because all her furniture was in California. Would I come and see the apartment? Would I come now? We could take a late train in and spend the night there. I said that I would, but first I had to go into the house and see that the children were all right. I went upstairs to the children's room. They were asleep. Zena had already locked herself in. I went into the bathroom to wash my hands and found on the basin a note, written by Betty-Ann, my oldest daughter. "Dear Daddy," she had written, "do not leave us."

This convergence of reality and unreality was meaningless. The children wouldn't know anything about my delusion. The back porch, to their clear eyes, would seem empty. The note would only reflect their inescapable knowledge of my unhappiness. But Olga was waiting on the back porch. I seemed to feel her impatience, to see the way she swung her long legs, glanced at her wristwatch (a graduation present), and smoked a cigarette, and yet I also seemed nailed to the house by the children's plea. I could not move. Sitting in the bathroom, I seemed to be racked and torn with the desire to find someone with clear features that would dispel my somber feelings and nailed through the heart by a plea. I ran downstairs, but she had gone. No pretty woman waits very long for anyone. She was a fiction, and yet I

couldn't bring her back, any more than I could change the fact that her wristwatch was a graduation present and that her name was Olga.

She didn't come back for a week, although Zena was in terrible shape and there seemed to be some ratio, some connection, between her obstreperousness and my ability to produce a phantom. Every night at eight, the Livermores' television played the somber and graceful waltz, and I was out there every night. Ten days passed before she returned. Mr. Kovacs was cooking. Mr. Livermore was dyeing his grass. The music had just begun to fade when she appeared. Something had changed. She held her head down. What was wrong? As she came up the steps, I saw that she had been drinking. She was drunk. She began to cry as soon as I took her in my arms. I stroked her soft, dark hair, perfectly happy to support and hold her, whatever had happened. She told me everything. She had gone out with a man from the office. He had got drunk and seduced her. She had felt too ashamed of herself to go to work in the morning, and had spent some time in a bar. Then, half drunk, she had gone to the office to confront her seducer, and there had been a disorderly scene, during which she was fired. It was I she had betrayed, she told me. She didn't care about herself. I had given her a chance to lead a new life and she had failed me. I caught myself smiling fatuously at the depth of her dependence, the ardor with which she clung to me. I told her that it would be all right, that I would find her another job and pay her rent in the meantime. I forgave her, and she promised to return the next evening.

I rushed outdoors the next night – I was there long before eight o'clock, but she didn't come. She wasn't thoughtless. I knew that. She wouldn't deliberately disappoint me. She must be in trouble again, but how could I help her? How could I get word to her? I seemed to know the place where she lived. I knew its smells, its lights, the van Gogh reproduction, and the cigarette bums on the end table, but even so, the room didn't exist, and I couldn't look there. I thought of looking for her in the neighborhood bars, but I was not yet this insane. I waited for her again on the following night. I was worried but not angry when she didn't come, since she was, after all, such a defenseless child. The next night, it rained, and I knew she couldn't come, because she didn't have a raincoat. She had told me that. The next day was

Saturday, and I thought she might put off her return until Monday, the weekend train and bus schedules being so erratic. This seemed sensible to me, but I was so convinced that she would return on Monday that when she failed me I felt terribly disappointed and lost. She came back on Thursday. It was the same hour of day; I heard the same graceful waltz. Even down the length of the yard, long before she reached the porch, I could see she was staggering. Her hair was disheveled, her dress was torn, her wristwatch missing. I asked her, for some reason, about the wristwatch, but she couldn't remember where it was. I took her in my arms, and she told me what had happened. Her seducer had returned. She had let him in; she had let him move in. He stayed three days, and then they gave a party for some friends of his. The party was late and noisy, and the landlady called the police, who raided the place and took Olga off to jail, where she was charged with using the room for immoral purposes. She was in the Women's House of Detention for three days before her case was heard. A kindly judge gave her a suspended sentence. Now she was going back to California, back to her husband. She was no better than he, she kept insisting; they were two of a kind. He had wired her the money, and she was taking the night train. I tried to persuade her to stay and begin a new life. I was willing to go on helping her. I would take her on any terms. I shook her by the shoulders – I remember that. I remember shouting at her, "You can't go! You can't go! You're all I have. If you go, it will only prove that even the most transparent inventions of my imagination are subject to lust and age. You can't go! You can't leave me alone!"

"Stop talking to yourself," my wife shouted from the television room, and at that moment a thought occurred to me: Since I had invented Olga, couldn't I invent others – dark-eyed blondes, vivacious red-heads with marble skin, melancholy brunettes, dancers, women who sang, lonely housewives? Tall women, short women, sad women, women whose burnished hair flowed to their waists, sloe-eyed, squint-eyed, violet-eyed beauties of all kinds and ages could be mine. Mightn't Olga's going only mean that she was making room for someone else?

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. fix – 1. arrange or organize (a meeting, visits)

I'll fix (up) a meeting.

2. prepare food

He's just fixing a snack.

3. repair, mend

The car won't start – can you fix it?

2. improve – make or become better in quality

He improved his German.

3. disposition – a person's usual temperament or frame of mind

His disposition was naturally cheerful and bright.

4. haggard – looking tired and unhappy, esp. from worry or lack of sleep

She looks haggard.

5. endure – tolerate a person, event (esp. in negative sentences)

I can't endure that woman a moment longer.

6. sense – become aware of smth that one cannot actually hear, see

Although she didn't say anything, I sensed (that) she didn't like the idea.

7. inconsiderate – not caring about the feelings of other people, thoughtless

It is inconsiderate of people to smoke in public.

8. attitude – the way a person views or behaves towards something

I didn't like his attitude that he deserves special treatment.

9. blame smb for smth/smith on smb – consider/say that smb is responsible for smth bad

A bad workman blames his tools.

10. fulfil – bring about the completion or achievement of (a desire, promise, etc.)

He fulfilled his promise to make her life easier.

11. take a stroll – take a walk

Let's go for a stroll.

12. include – be made up of or contain

Do you include walking among your amusements?

13. capricious – showing sudden changes in attitude or behavior

Our country has a cruel, capricious and unjust system of punishment.

14. conduct – the manner in which a person behaves

You will be called over the coals for your conduct.

15. hasten – 1. hurry

He hastened away/ to the station.

2. cause smth to be done or to happen earlier or more quickly.

A rise in interest rates could hasten the onset of recession.

16. freak – very unusual and unexpected event or action

e.g: **a freak accident/storm/occurrence**

By some freak (of chance) he wasn't injured at all.

17. incorrigible – that cannot be improved or corrected (of people or their faults)

e.g: **an incorrigible liar/gambler/habits/rogue**

Peter, you are an incorrigible flirt!

18. plot – make a secret plan to do smth

The officers were accused of plotting the overthrow of the government.

19. cheer – support

I applied to her for cheer.

20. bewilderment – utter confusion; puzzling

Parents expressed bewilderment and anger at the meeting.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. reproach, disapprove

2. stand, tolerate, bear

3. behavior, demeanor, manners

4. involve, embody, take in

5. advance, enhance, develop, progress

6. quicken, accelerate, haste

7. accomplish, carry out, complete, achieve

8. conspire, contrive, intrigue, plan

9. unusual, weird, uncommon, strange, odd

10. attentive, concerned, thoughtful

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. It was very _____ of you to include me.
A. fragrant B. consisting C. calm D. considerate
2. The price _____ dinner, bed, and breakfast.
A. intends B. raises C. includes D. improves
3. They _____ the failure of the talks on the Russians.
A. bear B. blame C. contrive D. block
4. They're _____ to kill him.
A. plotting B. enduring C. puzzling D. quickening
5. The house stuck out because of is _____ shape.
A. exhausted B. real C. perplexed D. freak
6. Our main objective is to _____ educational standards.
A. improve B. include C. convince D. fire
7. The strike _____ the downfall of the government.
A. confronted B. paid C. plotted D. hastened
8. Two players were sent off for violent _____.
A. plot B. conduct C. jail D. feature
9. I can't _____ seeing animals suffer like that.
A. confuse B. reproach C. endure D. plot
10. They hope to _____ their objective by 2010.
A. fulfill B. include C. involve D. charge

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

improve	blame	conduct	freak	considerate
endure	fulfill	hasten	plot	include

1. It was _____ of you not to play the piano while I was asleep.
2. Supporters feel that the team has not _____ their expectations.
3. She acted with _____ haste – it didn't look like her.
4. They _____ the rise in oil prices on the big increase in inflation.
5. Artificial heating _____ the growth of plants.
6. I cannot _____ to listen to your insults any more.
7. She's _____ her revenge.
8. The prisoner was released early because of good _____.
9. The proposals _____ increasing the tax on petrol.

10. A light airy sun lounge greatly _____ the quality of life of residents.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. blame	A. discharge	B. disapprove	C. discard	D. disappear
2. include	A. enter	B. intrude	C. inspires	D. involve
3. conduct	A. wealth	B. poverty	C. conductor	D. behavior
4. endure	A. tolerate	B. enhance	C. develop	D. achieve
5. improve	A. include	B. advance	C. embody	D. attribute
6. freak	A. odd	B. common	C. fragrant	D. odorous
7. plot	A. excite	B. reproach	C. plan	D. reproduce
8. fulfill	A. fill	B. achieve	C. focus	D. constitute
9. considerate	A. sensible	B. sensitive	C. selfish	D. thoughtful
10. hasten	A. quicken	B. accomplish	C. progress	D. advance

Part 2

1. **raise** – bring up; rear

I should know my own son, I've raised him from a baby.

2. **commercial** – a commercially sponsored advertisement on radio or television

I hate these commercials for cat food.

3. **somber** – dim, gloomy, or shadowy; melancholy

The dining room was somber.

4. **fade** – 1. lose or cause to lose brightness, colour, or clarity

The colors of the photograph have faded from being kept in bright light.

2. vanish slowly; die out

The idea faded out.

5. **attribute** – a property, quality, or feature belonging to a person or thing

A scepter is the attribute of power.

6. **reverie** – an act or state of absent-minded daydreaming

e.g. **be sunk/lost in reverie**

She was deep in reverie.

7. **escape** – avoidance of injury, harm, etc

He had a narrow escape.

8. **invent** – create or devise (new ideas, machines, etc.)

Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone.

9. fragrant – having a pleasant and sweet smell

Our bedroom window overlooks a fragrant rose garden.

10. feature – any one of the parts of the face, such as the nose, chin, or mouth

She was quite tall with delicate features.

11. threaten – make a threat or threats against smb, use smth as a threat

The hijackers threatened to kill all the passengers if their demands were not met.

12. bask in – sit or lie, enjoying the warmth or light of smth

He was basking in the warm glow of success.

13. clemency – mercy, esp when punishing smb

He appealed to the judge for clemency.

14. requite – give smth in return for smth else

the joys of requited love

15. consolation – smb or smth that makes you feel better

Your boys were a great consolation to me when your father died.

16. desolate – miserable and without friends; lonely and sad

We all felt absolutely desolate when she left.

17. dare – 1. be brave enough to do smth

Even the sleaziest of the newspapers didn't dare publish these pictures.

2. smb to do smth – challenge smb to do smth dangerous or difficult

I dare you to tell your mother.

18. ardent – very enthusiastic or passionate about

He is an ardent admirer of Michael Jackson.

19. coincidence – a surprising instance of similar events or circumstances

happening at the same time by chance

Was our meeting here a coincidence?

20. nut – foolish or mad person

He is a bit of a nut, if you ask me.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. dim, lose, color, dull, bleach

2. odorous, sweet, scented, aromatic

3. comfort, solace, relief

4. miserable, lonely, wretched

5. announcement, advertisement, publicity

6. create, device, imagine, originate

7. characteristic, feature _____
8. challenge, provoke, urge, egg on _____
9. part, quality, characteristic _____
10. bring up, rear _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. There was a _____ for dog food.
A. conduct B. commercial C. shadow D. sentence
2. Peter had all the _____ of a first-class athlete.
A. sentences B. attributes C. attitudes D. attics
3. The air in the garden was warm and _____.
A. drawn B. pale C. fragrant D. beautiful
4. Somebody _____ me to jump off the bridge into to river.
A. dared B. plotted C. stood D. contrived
5. For most parents _____ children is a positive challenge.
A. raising B. confronting C. dispelling D. fulfilling
6. I can't bear such _____ existence any more.
A. conduct B. alone C. desolate D. haphazard
7. I'm sorry I forgot your present; it's not much _____, but here's your card.
A. mirage B. secret C. consolation D. appeal
8. The gossip columnist simply _____ the stories about him.
A. invented B. fired C. sentenced D. fulfilled
9. Her large blue eyes were her best _____.
A. commercial B. plot C. feature D. conduct
10. Marie's smile slowly _____.
A. hastened B. endured C invented. D. faded

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

raise	attribute	feature	dare	desolate
commercial	invent	consolation	fragrant	fade

1. The laughter _____ when they saw Karl's face.
2. She would _____ any excuse to avoid seeing people.
3. His religious faith was a _____ during his troubles.
4. The children were _____ as vegetarians.
5. I _____ you to jump the stream!
6. He felt _____ when his wife left him.

7. I couldn't forget his handsome rugged _____.
8. In the shop I could feel the smell of _____ herbs.
9. Her greatest _____ was her kindness.
10. I came across a _____ for a new car.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. fragrant	A. aromatic	B. sensible	C. tasty	D. delicious
2. invent	A. contrive	B. accomplish	C. device	D. plot
3. feature	A. quality	B. quantity	C. tribune	D. trial
4. attribute	A. character	B. characteristic	C. choice	D. attitude
5. consolation	A. demean our	B. carriage	C. relief	D. solitude
6. fade	A. contrive	B. improve	C. dare	D. dim
7. dare	A. chose	B. challenge	C. deny	D. enhance
8. commercial	A. comfort	B. price	C. belief	D. advertisement
9. desolate	A. stupid	B. caring	C. wretched	D. fashionable
10. raise	A. bear	B. bleak	C. book	D. bring up

Part 3

1. delusion – false opinion or belief, esp. one that may be a symptom of madness

He's suffering under the dangerous delusion that his policies are actually working.

2. plea for smth – an urgent emotional request, an appeal

He was deaf to her pleas.

3. dispel – disperse or drive away

I tried to dispel her fears but without success.

4. fiction – thing that is invented or imagined and is not true

The government is trying to maintain the fiction that the country's economy is improving.

5. obstreperousness – noisiness, smth difficult to control (of people or their behavior)

obstreperous – noisy or rough, esp in resisting restraint or control

Some children placed on the drug became more subdued, less obstreperous.

6. phantom – (n) a frightening and unclear image, an illusion, a ghost

Suddenly, a phantom appeared out of the mist, terrifying the hikers.

7. seduce smb – 1. persuade or tempt smb to do smth they would not usually agree to do

Higher salaries are seducing many teachers into industry.

2. persuade smb. esp younger to have sex

She claimed that he had seduced her.

8. confront – face and deal with a problem

She knew she'd have to confront her parents when she got home.

9. fire – dismiss an employee from a job, lay off

He was fired for stealing money.

10. fail smb – disappoint smb, be absent or lacking when needed

He felt he had failed his family by being unemployed.

11. insane – mentally deranged; crazy; of unsound mind

Sometimes I think I'm going insane.

12. defense – 1. the act of protecting something or someone from attack

Martin decided to speak in his own defense.

2. (in a court) smth said to prove that someone is not guilty of a crime

Major has a good defense and believes he will win the case.

13. erratic – not regular or even in movement, quality or behavior, not reliable

Delivery of goods are erratic.

14. convince – persuade someone

He managed to convince the jury of his innocence.

15. stagger – move or walk as if about to fall

I hit him hard and he staggered and fell.

16. jail – prison

He was sent to jail.

17. charge with – accuse of, especially formally in a court of law

He was charged with murder.

She charged me with neglecting my work.

18. sentence – the decision as to what punishment is to be imposed

He got off with a light sentence.

19. insist on – state or demand forcefully, esp. despite opposition

She insisted on seeing her lawyer.

20. be subject to – be likely to have, suffer from or be affected by

Children are more subject to colds than adults.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. open, exposed, prone, vulnerable _____
2. disappoint, abandon, forsake, let down _____
3. discharge, sack, lay off, dismiss _____
4. penitentiary, reformatory, prison _____
5. banish, dismiss, eliminate, dissipate _____
6. judgment, pronouncement, verdict, ruling _____
7. accuse, blame, incriminate, indict, impeach _____
8. protection, advocacy, guard _____
9. assure, prove to, bring around _____
10. encounter, oppose, face, withstand _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Two of his friends came to his _____.
A. plot B. defense C. schedule D. conduct
2. He was keen to _____ any illocutions we might have had.
A. invent B. dispel C. involve D. include
3. He is _____ to ill health.
A. freak B. subject C. sentence D. secret
4. He was _____ with stealing the jewels.
A. changed B. chosen C. shocked D. charged
5. Adam spent 3 years in _____ for drug possession.
A. resort B. school C. home D. jail
6. "Get out!" You're _____! – the boss cried to the employee.
A. fired B. failed C. fixed D. plotted
7. He friends _____ her when she most needed them.
A. blamed B. failed C. plotted D. hastened
8. She received the maximum _____ of 10 years.
A. sense B. sentence C. sign D. signature
9. They have _____ the problem of terrorism with great determination.
A. contrived B. confronted C. included D. improved
10. He failed to _____ the jury of his innocence.
A. contribute B. convince C. coincide D. contrive

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

dispel	fail	jail	subject	sentence
confront	charge	defense	convince	fire

1. Huge amounts of government money are spent on _____.
2. A man has been _____ in connection with the murder.
3. The company is trying to _____ rumors about a take over.
- 4 .At the last moment his courage _____ him and he ran away.
5. His boss _____ him because of habitual absenteeism.
6. He is serving an eight year _____ for burglary.
7. He is _____ to headaches.
8. Two armies _____ one another on the field.
9. She's been sent to _____ for murder.
10. What she said _____ me that I had been wrong.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. confront | A. understand | B. withdraw | C. include | D. withstand |
| 2. fail | A. let down | B. come into | C. put down | D. come down |
| 3. fire | A. survive | B. burn | C. bear | D. sack |
| 4. jail | A. supermarket | B. college | C. prison | D. cemetery |
| 5. dispel | A. eliminate | B. exclude | C. improve | D. advance |
| 6. convince | A. accuse | B. assure | C. save | D. suspect |
| 7. subject | A. proud | B. prone | C. chaotic | D. capable |
| 8. defense | A. protection | B. project | C. belief | D. accusation |
| 9. sentence | A. verdict | B. word | C. prison | D. text |
| 10. charge | A. suspect | B. accuse | C. inquire | D. accomplish |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. **be/get through** – manage to do or complete smth

I've got through a lot of correspondence today.

Let's start – there's a lot of work to get through/to be got through.

I'm not through yet. I should be finished in an hour.

2. **get along with smb/smth** – have a comfortable or friendly relationship with smb

Do you get along with your boss?

– make progress with smth

How's your son getting along with his studies?

– deal with situation, usually successfully

I wonder how Michael is getting along with his new job?

3. come around – become happy again after being in a bad mood

Don't scold the boy, he'll come around in time.

4. marry into – become a part of a family or group by marrying smb from it

He married into the aristocracy.

I have not inherited, but married into millions of dollars.

5. go on – continue doing

He said nothing but just went on working.

Go on! I'm listening.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. get along | a. complete |
| 2. marry into | b. have good relations with |
| 3. go on | c. gain smth through marriage |
| 4. be through | d. become happy |
| 5. come around | e. continue |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. Even though he kept searching for that word in a dictionary, he couldn't find it.
2. Jim and Maggie often argue, but if doesn't take them long to become happy again.
3. Telephone me when you finish, and we'll have dinner together.
4. I don't have very good relationship with the new woman I work with.
5. What luck she had, having got his money after marrying him.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. If you want to be promoted it helps to _____ your boss.
2. He _____ speaking for two hours! I thought he would never stop.
3. He _____ a wealthy family.
4. Your husband hasn't yet _____ after last failure.

5. Let me know when you _____ your work.

Part 2

1. spring up – appear, develop, grow, etc. quickly or suddenly

I can see weeds springing up everywhere.

New houses are springing up all over the town.

2. make out – manage to see smb/smth or hear or read smth

I could just make out a figure in the darkness.

3. have smth on – be wearing smth

She has a red jacket on.

4. fool smb into doing smth – trick or deceive smb so as to make them do smth or to be able to take smth from them

She fooled him into thinking the painting was genuine.

5. straighten (oneself) up – make one's body upright

Straighten yourself up and pay attention.

6. account for – be the explanation of smth, explain the cause of smth

His illness accounts for his absence.

There's no accounting for taste. (I don't like him and cannot understand why she does)

7. look for – search for

Where have you been? We've been looking for you.

8. come along – arrive, appear

When the right opportunity comes along, she'll take it.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

1. have smth on

a. arrive, appear

2. straighten up

b. manage to see, hear

3. spring up

c. be wearing smth

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 4. come along | d. appear, develop suddenly |
| 5. fool into | e. be the explanation of |
| 6. account for | f. talk into doing so as to deceive |
| 7. make out | g. make one's body upright |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

- Small purple flowers were growing all over our backyard.
- Keep yourself upright and pay attention.
- How do you explain these losses?
- While Dave was searching for her, he managed to see a figure in the dim light.
- Trouble shows up when you least expect it.
- When you wear expensive out fit, you should make your body upright, so that not to spoil the impression.
- He was deceived into believing that he had won a lot of money.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

- The clever salesman _____ the old lady _____ lending him all her money for his business by telling her that she would be rich.
- New towns are _____ to house the increasing population.
- I was waiting for the bus when Emma _____. It was a lovely surprise to see her.
- Can you _____ a shade on that picture?
- I couldn't see properly. I didn't _____ my glasses _____.
- The defendant couldn't _____ the fact that the money was found in his house.
- We hurried to _____ before the colonel arrived.

Part 3

1. confide in – trust smb enough to tell a secret to them

There is no one here I can confide in.

2. go out – spend time with smb, date

Tom has been going out with Kate for six months.

3. cling to – hold on tightly to

Survivors were clinging to the raft.

The children were clinging onto their mother.

4. put off – put smth to a later time, delay doing, postpone

We've had to put our wedding off until September.

5. move in/into – start to live in one's new house

Our new neighbors moved in yesterday.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. put off | a. hold on lightly |
| 2. confide in | b. start to live in a new house |
| 3. move in | c. postpone, delay |
| 4. go out | d. date |
| 5. cling to | e. trust enough to tell a secret |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. You can trust me and tell me whom you're dating with.
2. Our friends started to live in a new apartment a month ago.
3. Let's put this discussion to a later time, until we arrive at the university.
4. She stuck to the hope that her son was not dead.
5. I hope you know that you can always trust me.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Pam likes Michael as a friend, but she doesn't want to _____ with him.
2. We _____ going on holiday because I was busy at work.
3. Crossing the bridge, she felt dizzy and _____ the rails.
4. Alan felt he could _____ his brother.
5. He is _____ with his friend from college.

C. I d i o m s

1. keep (things) going – make an effort to live normally when one is in a difficult situation after experiencing great suffering

You just have to keep yourself busy and keep going.

2. cut/ tear smth to ribbons – cut, tear smth very badly

The wind tore the sails to ribbons.

3. be/get wet through (to the skin) – be/get thoroughly soaked

It was pouring rain. We got wet through.

4. take shorthand – use method of writing what smb is saying as quickly as they are saying it, using special symbols and abbreviations

Her job involves taking lectures down in shorthand.

5. on any terms – agreed to any conditions offered, demanded or accepted in an agreement, arrangement or contract

We need this agreement badly, so we are ready to sign it on any terms.

6. make room for – leave space somewhere for a particular thing, person, or activity

I'm trying to make room for a vegetable garden in the backyard.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

keep thing going	get wet through to the skin	take shorthand
cut to ribbons	on any terms	

1. Where have you been? You've _____.
2. The wind _____ the souls _____.
3. Will they teach you to _____ at the office?
4. You just have to pull yourself together and _____.
5. He didn't mind taking the job _____.

2. Complete the sentences with the appropriate verb *make* or *do*

1. You can _____ a lot of money playing the stock market.
2. We need to _____ room in here for the computer.
3. The company ought to _____ something about the poor service.
4. He failed to fulfill the promise he _____ before.
5. We'll have to get someone to _____ the dishes after the party.

6. She _____ a lot of cooking when she was married.

D. WORD STUDY

FIRE ▪ DISMISS ▪ LAY OFF ▪ SACK

1. fire – remove smb from their job because they have done smth wrong or badly, or as a way of saving costs of employing them

He was fired from his \$165.000 job for poor performance.

The company is reducing its workforce by firing 500 employees.

2. sack / give smb the sack – (Br.E, informal) make someone leave their job because they are not good enough or have done smth wrong

They couldn't sack me - I'd done nothing wrong.

He was sacked for being drunk.

3. dismiss – when an employer officially makes someone leave their jobs

He has been dismissed from his job for incompetence.

She was unfairly dismissed.

4. lay off – stop employing someone, usually because there is no work for them to do, or not enough money to pay their wages.

3000 car workers have been laid off at the factory in Cleveland.

He began his "recovery" program by laying a third of his workforce off.

5. make smb redundant – (British) stop employing someone because he/she is no longer needed.

At least 2,000 computer programmers have been made redundant in the past year.

No, I haven't been sacked – I've been made redundant.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word from the box

fire	sack	make smb redundant
dismiss	lay off	give smb the sack

1. It's illegal to _____ a woman for becoming pregnant.

2. My farther was among the workers who have been unfairly _____ from their jobs.

3. When the seven coal mines were closed, over 5,000 workers were _____.

4. Get out! You're _____!

5. We can't really _____ him _____ just because he's unpopular.

6. He says he's going to _____ thirty people _____, but we don't know who.
7. She's a terrible boss – she _____ people for the slightest mistake.
8. When demand for goods was shrinking, firms would close down or _____ workers.
9. If you're late again you'll be _____ from your job.
10. 70 men at the factory were _____ because of falling demand for our product.
11. He was _____ for stealing money from the till.
12. 600 employees were _____ because of the lack of new orders.
13. He was _____ for swearing at the boss.
14. During the recession they _____ us _____ for 3 months.
15. The President _____ him from his post as Trade Secretary.

▪ MAKE ▪

1. make for – to move in the direction of, head for

He picked up his umbrella and made for the door.

2. make of – to understand

I don't know what to make of our new teacher.

3. make off (with) – to run away, escape

The man made off with cash from the till, but was, caught by the police a short time later.

4. make out – to see, hear, understand, with difficulty

Can you make out a face here on the photograph?

to write all necessary information on (an official form, documents)

Applications must be made out in triplicate.

5. make over – to pass over to smb legally

The old lady made over her property to her children and moved to Florida.

6. make up – to invent, think up

I told the children a story, making it up as I went along

to become friends again after quarrel

They had an argument yesterday, but I think they've made up now.

to form as a whole, constitute

Two members of staff and eight parents make up the school committee.

7. make up for – to compensate

Nothing can make up for missing such a wonderful opportunity.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. I was trying to make _____ a good excuse for being late.
2. I'll make _____ the cheque to you, shall I?

3. We argue all right, but we always make _____ before long.
4. They gave him a free meal to make _____ the bad service he received.
5. It's too dark in here I can't make _____ where the light switch is.
6. The only witness to the accident made _____ before the police arrived.
7. He made _____ his estate to his son before he died.
8. I don't know what to make _____ his odd behavior.
9. Farming and mining make _____ most of the country's industry.
10. It started raining, so she made _____ the nearest shelter.

E. R E V I S I O N

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Patience is one of the most important _____ in a teacher.
A. attributes B. problems C. pleas D. conducts
2. To _____ softening, place the cream cheese in the oven for a few minutes.
A. confront B. hasten C. seduce D. insist
3. A bad workman _____ his tools.
A. occurs B. plots C. blames D. hastens
4. Jill wanted to come with us, but her babysitter _____ her at the last minute, so she had to stay at home.
A. failed B. invented C. included D. charged
5. She was _____ for refusing to comply with safety regulations.
A. hastened B. fired C. defended D. dispelled
6. Our only _____ was that no one was hurt seriously.
A. charge B. plea C. conduct D. consolation
7. Security forces _____ the demonstrators.
A. confronted B. fired C. invented D. staggered
8. The tour _____ a visit to the Science Museum.
A. included B. confronted C. fired D. dispelled
9. He was _____ with resisting arrest.
A. threatened B. hastened C. charged D. blamed
10. They were _____ to blow up the church.

- A. basking B. improving C. convincing D. plotting
11. He felt _____ without his friends.
- A. desolate B. fragrant C. smelly D. spacious
12. He never really _____ his potential as a player.
- A. fulfilled B. confronted C. hastened D. raised
13. He tried to _____ her worries but without success.
- A. fulfill B. hasten C. fail D. dispel
14. This seems strange to someone born and _____ in the city.
- A. raised B. subject C. improved D. dispelled
15. Maria had _____ herself that he didn't love her.
- A. raised B. convinced C. plotted D. fulfilled
16. He was stealing again, two months after getting out of _____.
- A. conduct B. defense C. sentence D. jail
17. His wife is a woman of delicate _____.
- A. conducts B. jails C. features D. future
18. Dan was silent as the judge pronounced the _____.
- A. conduct B. jail C. virus D. sentence
19. They heard the footsteps go past the room, then _____ into the distance.
- A. fade B. hasten C. fulfill D. improve

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

blame	fire	fade	defense	consolation
convince	include	feature	endure	sentence
attributes	hasten	confront	fulfill	

- John Hampden had the courage to _____ the whole power of the government.
- Time brought no _____ to her widowed heart.
- You can't _____ all your problems on your working class background.
- He couldn't _____ solitude and torture any more.
- He's the person who is responsible for hiring and _____.
- They try to _____ the coming of a new order.
- Justice must be an _____ of an ideal society.

8. Hopes that he will be found alive _____.
9. The conference delegates _____ many representatives from abroad.
10. How can I _____ you of her honesty?
11. The high wall was built as a _____ against intruders.
12. A _____ common to all these buildings is the entrance hall.
13. She has served her _____ and will now be released.
14. He was a promising young scientist who never _____ his ambitions.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. fade | A. surrender | B. hasten | C. bleach | D. urge |
| 2. dare | A. involve | B. urge | C. convince | D. consider |
| 3. confront | A. improve | B. exclude | C. enhance | D. encounter |
| 4. fulfill | A. accomplish | B. dismiss | C. employ | D. dim |
| 5. improve | A. include | B. enter | C. encounter | D. enhance |
| 6. conduct | A. bundle | B. haste | C. demeanor | D. odor |
| 7. fail | A. progress | B. abandon | C. encourage | D. defend |
| 8. subject | A. suspended | B. consideration | C. weird | D. vulnerable |
| 9. fire | A. dismiss | B. discourage | C. convince | D. burn |
| 10. fragrant | A. stingy | B. odorous | C. smelly | D. odd |
| 11. charge | A. change | B. sentence | C. incriminate | D. a quit |
| 12. freak | A. famous | B. wide | C. spacious | D. weird |
| 13. jail | A. newsagent | B. junk | C. butchery | D. penitentiary |
| 14. invent | A. originate | B. inspire | C. contrive | D. violate |
| 15. blame | A. approve | B. reproach | C. convince | D. exclude |

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to the boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. fire | A. sack | B. violate | C. hire | D. discourage |
| 2. consolation | A. solitude | B. agitation | C. release | D. relief |
| 3. dare | A. include | B. force | C. urge | D. discourage |
| 4. hasten | A. break | B. slow down | C. accelerate | D. come down |
| 5. freak | A. common | B. haphazard | C. chaotic | D. bizarre |
| 6. fragrant | A. sweet-scented | B. stinking | C. weird | D. common |
| 7. confront | A. count | B. encounter | C. enhance | D. surrender |
| 8. improve | A. dismiss | B. worship | C. worsen | D. progress |
| 9. include | A. involve | B. inspire | C. contrive | D. exclude |
| 10. fail | A. surrender | B. support | C. give up | D. give in |

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Their 7 daughters all _____ prominent local families.
2. Are you _____ politics?
3. Of course he was cold – he _____ practically nothing.
4. A number of factors _____ the differences between the two scores.
5. I _____ with most of my colleagues.
6. The thieves _____ in a stolen car.
7. Some children were sobbing and _____ their mothers.
8. Can you _____ what that sign says?
9. Burton smiled and _____ with his work.
10. Hard work can _____ a lack of intelligence.
11. He decided to give the money to the first stranger who _____.
12. What are the qualities that _____ her character?
13. In Southern California new Internet companies were _____ everyday.
14. Don't let anyone _____ you _____ handling over large sums of money.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. Don't walk on the broken glass – you'll _____ your feet _____.
2. Despite their problems, they tried to _____.
3. A secretary should be able to _____.
4. It was raining hard, so we _____.
5. You should make him leave the house _____.

7. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *make* or *do*.

1. You should _____ some room on that shelf for more books.
2. Who is going to _____ the cooking?
3. I'll try, but I'm not _____ any promises.
4. Here, let me help you _____ the dishes.
5. He _____ all his money by himself.
6. Are you _____ anything to right?

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *un-*, *dis-*.

___considerate	___corrigible	___faithful	___escapable
___patient	___real	___moral	___happy

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. He is an _____ and unprincipled person.
2. It is _____ of people to smoke in public.
3. The fog added to the _____ appearance of the landscape.
4. Investors were _____ about the risk.
5. War now seems _____.
6. I am quite _____ for the weekend to begin.
7. He had never been _____ to her before.
8. What has led to this _____ state of affairs?
9. She was offended by his _____ remarks.
10. The _____ fact is that the situation is likely to change.
11. He believes it's _____ to kill animals for food.
12. He is a bit _____ with slow learners.
13. She was an _____ creature of the imagination.
14. It's _____ to steal from the poor.
15. He is an _____ smoker.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Each year thousands of people are killed and injured _____ car accidents.
2. _____ different circumstances she might have been able to appreciate the irony of it.
3. I'd only just got out of bed, so I wasn't _____ my best.
4. We have an opening _____ a secretary in the sales division.
5. Friends expressed shock at the news _____ his death.
6. I knew we were _____ trouble when the lift stopped.
7. The bank makes loans _____ easy terms.
8. I pretended I had forgotten the incident as if it were of no importance _____ me.
9. It seems he had a heart attack _____ the wheel.
10. The recent fax cuts will be good _____ business.
11. There isn't much need _____ further research.
12. I met her _____ a train to Glasgow.
13. Their business is _____ the south of the city.
14. I can't believe how _____ shape he is.
15. We can't take you all _____ the simple reason that there isn't enough room in the car.
16. They had many treasures _____ their possession.
17. Ann's not in – she's gone _____ a run.
18. We stopped _____ a campsite for a week.
19. Yesterday I saw a commercial _____ your product.
20. Her face was wet _____ tears.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. I didn't think much _____ Hajime's new girl-friend.
2. I phoned your office and spoke _____ your assistant.
3. You shouldn't speak ill _____ your father.
4. The laboratory smelled strongly _____ chemicals.

5. The company is delighted _____ the response to its advertisement.
6. He is extremely ashamed _____ his behavior last night.
7. I don't think she cares _____ him at all.
8. The police have charged him _____ murder.
9. You can't blame your misfortune _____ your mother.
10. The hat only partially protected his face _____ the sun.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. The children are learning _____ (swim) this summer.
2. She seemed _____ (want) to take very good care of herself.
3. She isn't tall enough _____ (reach) the top shelf so she uses a ladder.
4. You'd better _____ (take) an umbrella – it's going to rain.
5. She can't go on _____ (pretend) that everything is okay when it clearly isn't.
6. The terrorists are threatening _____ (kill) the hostage.
7. They said they would call us when it was time _____ (dine).
8. He never remembered _____ (lock) the door when he went out.
9. I didn't really expect you _____ (understand).
10. It's too hot _____ (wear) a coat.
11. Andrei Sakharov was one of the few people who dared _____ (protest).
12. There used _____ (be) a cinema thirty years ago.
13. He was having trouble _____ (hear) her.
14. That will take time _____ (get) to another side of the city.
15. She remembers _____ (see) him leave an hour ago.
16. I expect _____ (be paid) on time.
17. I can't endure _____ (be humiliated) any more.
18. The older boys dared Jennings _____ (go) up on the roof.

19. I'm not used to _____ (get) up early in the morning.
20. It might be worth while _____ (recall) a few important facts.
21. Her parent were happy _____ (know) she's got a good job.
22. Peter wished he'd never promised _____ (help) them.
23. I keep _____ (forget) to put the answering machine on.
24. Just try _____ (stay) calm.
25. Nobody could persuade her _____ (change) her mind.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *say* or *tell*.

1. "He came home with lipstick on his face." "_____ no more!"
2. He _____ the news everybody in the office.
3. Please _____ me if I look okay in the dress.
4. Tony _____ he enjoyed the performance.
5. She _____ your fortune by looking at the lines on your hand.
6. I think he lies there but I can't _____ for sure.
7. Don't _____ I didn't _____ you they were coming.
8. She stopped to _____ a passer-by the time.
9. Just _____ the word, and I'll go.
10. And now I would like to _____ a few words about this year's competition.
11. Could you _____ me the secret of you success?
12. Can you _____ Tom from his twin brother?

7. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. Andrew said, "My sister is coming to visit me next week."

2. Dad asked, "Will you go to the camp next summer."

3. They asked us, "Where is the post office?"

4. She said to us, "We got married six months ago."

5. She asked, "Where have you been this morning?"

6. The teacher said, "The earth moves round the sun."

7. Mrs. Morris said, "I'll go to the doctor next week."

8. Tom asked Rita, "Has Hank been working in the garden?"

9. Raul asked Bill, "When did you start working here?"

10. Sue asked Darrel, "Can you play the piano?"

11. He asked, "Will you take me to work tomorrow?"

12. She asked him, "When are you leaving for Paris?"

13. She said to Alex, "You can come and stay with me if you are ever in London."

14. Alex asked Angela, "When will I see you again?"

15. The waiter asked me, "Have you ever tasted Indian food before?"

8. Rewrite the sentences using the words in the box.

explain	warn	complain	demand	promise
threaten	order	deny	accuse	admit

1. "Give me all your money now!" he said.

2. "I'll never do such a thing again," she said.

3. "I took your new car," Steve said.

4. He said to us, "Don't go near the waterfall."

5. "You killed him," David said to Sally.

6. She said, "They didn't pay me enough money."

7. "I have never seen that man before!" he said.

8. "What a fantastic view!" they said.

9. "Be quiet!" the teacher said to the boys.

10. "If you don't leave, I'll phone the police," he said.

9. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. She said to Alex, "Can I help you pack your Suitcase?"

2. Jack asked, "Would you like me to book tickets for Monday's performance?"

3. The neighbors said, "We'll look after your son, Mary."

4. Mary said to Ann, "Would you like a cup of coffee?"

5. She said, "Shall I collect the tickets on my way to work?"

6. Mr. Brown said, "Let me drive you home, Mike."

10. Turn these suggestions into reported sentences.

1. Sally said, "Shall we go to the cinema tomorrow."

2. Alan said to Tom, "We could go to the rock concert."

3. Mum said, "Why don't we go for a walk?"

4. Darrel said, "Let's have a snack before going home."

5. "How about going to the circus?" he said.

6. The chairman said, "I suggest that we change the timetable."

7. Mrs. Jones said, "Why not go to the Goya exhibition."

11. Turn these sentences into reported offers/suggestions.

1. He said, "How about playing a double?"

2. Hank said, "Shall we go to Helen's party?"

3. Alison said, "I'll help you organize the meeting."

4. Ann said, "Let's go ice-skating this weekend."

5. "I can make copies of the project," Bob said.

6. "Why don't we watch a video?" they said.

7. Sarah said, "Shall I meet you at the station?"

8. The headmaster said, "We could go to the opera tonight."

9. Jack Morrison said, "Would you like me to do some research on the subject?"

10. Mother said, "I'll bake a cake for the party."

12. Turn these invitations into reported sentences.

1. "Would you like to come to my party?" she said to him.

2. The office manager said, "Would you care to go around the company?"

3. "Do you feel like going for a drive in the country this afternoon?" Leslie said.

4. "What about going on a boat trip?" he said.

5. Mary said to us, "I wonder if you'd like to come round for supper."

6. Alison said, "I'm having a little party and I'd like you to come, Brian."

13. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. "Will you pour me a cup of coffee?" Elaine asked.

2. "Bring me the newspaper!" James shouted.

3. Jack said "Would you like to go to a football match with me on Saturday?"

4. "I suggest that you stay home and rest, "the doctor said.

5. "Open the door at once!" the policeman said to him.

6. Marion said to Paul, "Do you feel like spending the weekend at my place?"

7. "Please, please don't tell anyone I'm here," she said to him.

8. "Why don't you hire a professional to help out with decorating?" Susan said to Chris.

9. Rachel said to Tina, "Would you like to go and see "Macbeth" at the theatre tomorrow?"

10. "Can I get you an aspirin?" he said.

11. "Please, stay a little longer," Kate said to her sister.

12. "Don't throw litter out of the window!" Mum said to me.

13. She said, "Shall we go swimming?"

14. "Would you like to do the shopping?" she said.

15. He said to Jill, "Please, get me a glass of water!"

14. Join the ideas using *in order to/ so as/ so that*.

1. She applied to Swansea University. She wanted to study law.

2. Government should take measures. Citizens can live in safety.

3. I'll take a map not to get lost.

4. They practiced a lot. They wanted to improve their writing skills.

5. He turned the music down. He didn't want to wake his mother.

6. The teacher did revision exercises. He wanted the students to be well prepared for the test.

7. She started exercising. She wanted to lose weight.

8. He trained hard. He wanted to win the race.

9. She decided to walk the dog. She didn't want it to bark all right.

10. I will set my alarm clock. I don't want to wake up late.

15. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. *Despite/Unlike* the snow, he decided to go to the village.
2. He missed his flight. *Moreover/Consequently* he was the only one who didn't attend the conference.
3. I had a great holiday, *even though/whereas* it rained all the time.
4. Self-defense classes can help you protect yourself. *Furthermore/In contrast*, they keep you fit.
5. I first saw Sam Moroney in Manchester. *After/After that*, I didn't miss any of his British concerts.
6. He put a lock on his bicycle *while/since* he didn't want it to be stolen.
7. It was raining hard. *What is more/as a result* the match was cancelled.
8. Tom likes football, *while/similarly* Stuart is found of basketball.

9. *While/By the time* Sue reached the bank, it had closed.
10. We took a map *however/so that* we could find the way.
11. Going on holiday is a great way to relax. *Similarly/Nevertheless*, taking short trips at the weekend can also be enjoyable.
12. Traveling by airplane is fast. *Moreover/However*, it is expensive.
13. I bought some stamps *as soon as/so that* I could post some letters.
14. The worker went on a strike *because/in spite of* bad working conditions.
15. *Moreover/As soon as* he fell asleep, the phone rang.

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

PART 1

1. What was Zena like?
2. Why did she call her husband inconsiderate?
3. Why did the children leave the kitchen in a haste?
4. What happened to Zena's sisters husbands?
5. What were Zena's and her husband's duties about the house?

PART 2

1. Who was Olga?
2. What did Olga look like?
3. What was the reason why Olga comes to that place?
4. Why did N feel happy and expectant in the restaurant?
5. What difficulties did Olga experience?

PART 3

1. What did N want to do for Olga?
2. Why didn't N leave his house and go with Olga, when they met for the third time?
3. What sort of trouble did Olga get into?
4. How did N feel about Olga's departure?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

PART 1

1. What is the meaning of the title as it relates to the plot of the story?
2. What was behind Zena's obstreperousness?
3. Who do you think was the first to start a quarrel most of the times?
4. Could Zena really plot her husband's death?

PART 2

1. What was the reason why N invented the chimera?
2. Why do you think was Olga described as a fragile and defenseless thing?
3. Why was N willing to help Olga?

PART 3

1. What was the real reason why N didn't go with Olga to look at her apartment?
2. Why do you think did N invent a story about a man who seduced Olga?
3. Why didn't N feel frustrated when Olga decided to return to her husband?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list each character qualities/habits. Give examples of their behavior.

Character	Qualities/Habits	Behavior/Event
Zena	moody	Was in terrible shape. Her disposition was generally terrible.
	sensitive	She was offended by her husband's appearance. Couldn't endure being served breakfast by a hairy mail in his underwear
	likes to dominate	doesn't allow her husband to sit in kitchen or the

		living room. Hated when someone wake her up
N	Play the second fiddle	Served his wife breakfast in bed. Washed the dishes Was nailed to the house by the children's sled
Olga	defenseless	Needed protection from her husband. Couldn't find a job because she could do nothing. Has by the man from the office.

2. Think of some examples of cause-and-effect relationship in this story. Then complete the following chart.

Cause	Effect
1. Zena's disposition was generally terrible.	1. She picked on her husband. They were unhappy together.
2.	2. Zena called her husband inconsiderate.
3. He wanted some kind of loveliness, softness, gentleness, humor, sweetness and kindness.	3.
4.	4. Olga was fired.
5.	5.

6.	6.

D. S H A R I N G I D E A S

1. Discuss the relationship between Zena and her husband. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
2. Discuss N's attitude to Olga.
3. Think about what might happen to Olga and N and their relations if she didn't get leave?
4. Do you think that N would invent another chimera? What might happen to her?

E. W R I T I N G

1. Compare and contrast Zena and Olga in characters and behavior.
2. Pretend to be Olga. Write a letter to a friend describing the problems at your job.

UNIT 7

The Heptapods

Ted Chiang (from "Story of your Life")

PART 1

I know how this story ends; I think about it a lot. I also think a lot about how it began, just a few years ago, when ships appeared in orbit and artifacts appeared in meadows. The government said next to nothing about them, while the tabloids said every possible thing. And then I got a phone call, a request for a meeting.

I spotted them waiting in the hallway, outside my office. They made an odd couple; one wore a military uniform and a crew cut, and carried an aluminum briefcase. He seemed to be assessing his surroundings with a critical eye. The other one was easily identifiable as an academic: full beard and mustache, wearing corduroy. He was browsing through the sheets stapled to a bulletin board nearby.

"Colonel Weber, I presume?" I shook hands with the soldier. "Louise Banks."

"Dr. Banks. Thank you for taking the time to speak with us," he said. Colonel Weber indicated his companion. "This is Dr. Gary Donnelly, the physicist I mentioned when we spoke on the phone."

"Call me Gary," he said as we shook hands.

We entered my office.

"You said you wanted me to listen to a recording. I presume this has something to do with the aliens?"

"All I can offer is the recording," said Colonel Weber.

"Okay, let's hear it."

Colonel Weber took a tape machine out of his briefcase and pressed PLAY.

"What do you make of that?" he asked.

"What was the context in which this recording was made?"

"I'm not at liberty to say."

"It would help me interpret those sounds. Could you see the alien while it was speaking? Was it doing anything at the time?"

"The recording is all I can offer."

"You won't be giving anything away if you tell me that you've seen the aliens;

the public's assumed you have."

Colonel Weber wasn't budging. "Do you have any opinion about its linguistic properties?" he asked.

"Well, it's clear that their vocal tract is substantially different from a human vocal tract. I assume that these aliens don't look like humans?"

The colonel was about to say something noncommittal when Gary Donnelly asked, "Can you make any guesses based on the tape?"

"Not really. It doesn't sound like they're using a larynx to make those sounds, but that doesn't tell me what they look like."

"Anything - is there anything else you can tell us?" asked Colonel Weber.

I could see he wasn't accustomed to consulting a civilian. "Only that establishing communications is going to be really difficult because of the difference in anatomy. They're almost certainly using sounds that the human vocal tract can't reproduce, and maybe sounds that the human ear can't distinguish. In that case we'd need a sound spectrograph to know what an alien is saying. "

Colonel Weber asked, "Suppose I gave you an hour's worth of recordings; how long would it take you to determine if we need this sound spectrograph or not?"

"I couldn't determine that with just a recording no matter how much time I had. I'd need to talk with the aliens directly."

The colonel shook his head. "Not possible."

"But the only way to learn an unknown language is to interact with a native speaker, and by that I mean asking questions, holding a conversation, that sort of thing. Without that, it's simply not possible. So if you want to learn the aliens' language, someone with training in field linguistics-whether it's me or someone else-will have to talk with an alien. Recordings alone aren't sufficient."

Then Colonel Weber asked, "Suppose you were learning a new language by talking to its speakers; could you do it without teaching them English?"

"That would depend on how cooperative the native speakers were. They'd almost certainly pick up bits and pieces while I'm learning their language, but it wouldn't have to be much if they're willing to teach. On the other hand, if they'd rather learn English than teach us their language, that would make things far more difficult." The colonel nodded. "I'll get back to you on this matter."

PART 2

The MP checked my badge, made a notation on his clipboard, and opened the gate; I drove the off-road vehicle into the encampment, a small village of tents pitched by the Army in a farmer's sun-scorched pasture. At the center of the encampment was one of the alien devices, nicknamed "looking glasses."

According to the briefings I'd attended, there were nine of these in the United States, one hundred and twelve in the world. The looking glasses acted as two-way communication devices, presumably with the ships in orbit. No one knew why the aliens wouldn't talk to us in person; fear of cooties, maybe. A team of scientists, including a physicist and a linguist, was assigned to each looking glass; Gary Donnelly and I were on this one.

Gary was waiting for me in the parking area. We navigated a circular maze of concrete barricades until we reached the large tent that covered the looking glass itself. In front of the tent was an equipment cart loaded with goodies borrowed from the school's phonology lab; I had sent it ahead for inspection by the Army.

Also outside the tent were three tripod-mounted video cameras whose lenses peered, through windows in the fabric wall, into the main room. Everything Gary and I did would be reviewed by countless others, including military intelligence. In addition we would each send daily reports, of which mine had to include estimates on how much English I thought the aliens could understand.

Gary held open the tent flap and gestured for me to enter. "Step right up," he said. "Marvel at creatures the likes of which have never been seen on God's green earth."

At the moment the looking glass was inactive, resembling a semicircular mirror over ten feet high and twenty feet across. On the brown grass in front of the looking glass, an arc of white spray paint outlined the activation area.

Gary and I looked at each other, and then began pushing the cart of equipment up to the table. As we crossed the paint line, the looking glass appeared to grow

transparent; it was as if someone was slowly raising the illumination behind tinted glass. The illusion of depth was uncanny; I felt I could walk right into it. Once the looking glass was fully lit it resembled a life-sized diorama of a semicircular room.

We busied ourselves connecting everything together: microphone, sound spectrograph, portable computer, and speaker. As we worked, I frequently glanced at the looking glass, anticipating the aliens' arrival. Even so I jumped when one of them entered.

It looked like a barrel suspended at the intersection of seven limbs. It was radially symmetric, and any of its limbs could serve as an arm or a leg. The one in front of me was walking around on four legs, three non-adjacent arms curled up at its sides. Gary called them "heptapods."

I'd been shown videotapes, but I still gawked. Its limbs had no distinct joints; anatomists guessed they might be supported by vertebral columns. Seven lidless eyes ringed the top of the heptapod's body. It walked back to the doorway from which it entered, made a brief sputtering sound, and returned to the center of the room followed by another heptapod.

Gary had been watching my reaction. "Ready?" he asked.

I took a deep breath. "Ready enough."

I walked up to the looking glass and a heptapod on the other side did the same. The image was so real that my skin crawled. I could see the texture of its gray skin. I pointed to myself and said slowly, "Human." Then I pointed to Gary. "Human." Then I pointed at each heptapod and said, "What are you?" No reaction. I tried again, and then again. One of the heptapods pointed to itself with one limb, the four terminal digits pressed together. That was lucky. In some cultures a person pointed with his chin; if the heptapod hadn't used one of its limbs, I wouldn't have known what gesture to look for. I heard a brief fluttering sound, and saw a puckered orifice at the top of its body vibrate; it was talking. Then it pointed to its companion and fluttered again. I went back to my computer; on its screen were two virtually identical spectrographs

representing the fluttering sounds. I marked a sample for playback. I pointed to myself and said "Human" again, and did the same with Gary. Then I pointed to the heptapod, and played back the flutter on the speaker. The heptapod fluttered some more. The second half of the spectrograph for this utterance looked like a repetition: call the previous utterances [flutter 1], then this one was [flutter 2flutter 1]. I pointed at something that might have been a heptapod chair. "What is that?"

The heptapod paused, and then pointed at the "chair" and talked some more. The spectrograph for this differed distinctly from that of the earlier sounds: [flutter3]. Once again, I pointed to the "chair" while playing back [flutter3]. The heptapod replied; judging by the spectrograph, it looked like [flutter3flutter2]. The heptapod was confirming my utterances as correct, which implied compatibility between heptapod and human patterns of discourse. .At my computer I delimited certain sections of the spectrograph and typed in a tentative gloss for each: "heptapod" for [flutter1], "yes" for [flutter2], and "chair" for [flutter3].

PART 3

Gary and I entered the prefab building containing the center of operations for the looking glass site. Inside it looked like they were planning an invasion, or perhaps an evacuation: crew-cut soldiers worked around a large map of the area, or sat in front of burly electronic gear while speaking into headsets. We were shown into Colonel Weber's office, a room in the back that was cool from air conditioning. We briefed the colonel on our first day's results. "Doesn't sound like you got very far," he said.

"I have an idea as to how we can make faster progress," I said. "But you'll have to approve the use of more equipment."

"What more do you need?"

"A digital camera, and a big video screen." I showed him a drawing of the setup I imagined. "I want to try conducting the discovery procedure using writing; I'd display words on the screen, and use the camera to record the words they write. I'm

hoping the heptapods will do the same."

Weber looked at the drawing dubiously. "What would be the advantage of that?"

"So far I've been proceeding the way I would with speakers of an unwritten language. Then it occurred to me that the heptapods must have writing, too."

"So?"

"If the heptapods have a mechanical way of producing writing, then their writing ought to be very regular, very consistent. That would make it easier for us to identify graphemes instead of phonemes. It's like picking out the letters in a printed sentence instead of trying to hear them when the sentence is spoken aloud."

"I take your point," he admitted. He leaned back in his chair. "You know we want to show as little of our technology as possible."

"I understand, but we're using machines as intermediaries already. If we can get them to use writing, I believe progress will go much faster than if we're restricted to the sound spectrographs."

Weber considered it. For me it wasn't even a question, but from his point of view it was a difficult one; like a soldier, though, he made it quickly. "Request granted. Talk to the sergeant outside about bringing in what you need. Have it ready for tomorrow."

At our next session at the looking glass, we repeated the procedure we had performed before, this time displaying a printed word on our computer screen at the same time we spoke: showing HUMAN while saying "Human," and so forth. Eventually, the heptapods understood what we wanted, and set up a flat circular screen mounted on a small pedestal. One heptapod spoke, and then inserted a limb into a large socket in the pedestal; a doodle of script, vaguely cursive, popped onto the screen. I also tried asking our two informants for terms for addressing each individually; personal names, if they had such things. Their answers were of course unpronounceable. I dubbed them Flapper and Raspberry. I hoped I'd be able to tell them apart.

To be fair, the heptapods were completely cooperative. In the days that followed, they readily taught us their language without requiring us to teach them any more English.

Our biggest source of confusion was the heptapods' "writing." It didn't appear to be writing at all; it looked more like a bunch of intricate graphic designs. The logograms weren't arranged in rows, or a spiral, or any linear fashion. Instead, Flapper or Raspberry would write a sentence by sticking together as many logograms as needed into a giant conglomeration. This form of writing was reminiscent of primitive sign systems, which required a reader to know a message's context in order to understand it. Such systems were considered too limited for systematic recording of information.

As time went on, the teams at each looking glass began working in earnest on learning heptapod terminology for elementary mathematics and physics.

Our teams were successful with basic arithmetic, but we hit a road block with geometry and algebra. The heptapods didn't seem to understand what we were getting at. Likewise, the physics discussions went poorly. Only with the most concrete terms, like the names of the elements, did we have any success. We tried to demonstrate basic physical attributes like mass and acceleration so we could elicit their terms for them, but the heptapods simply responded with requests for clarification. Days with no progress became weeks, and the physicists were becoming disillusioned.

By contrast, the linguists were having much more success. We made steady progress decoding the grammar of the spoken language.

We regularly asked the heptapods why they had come. Each time, they answered "to see," or "to observe." Indeed, sometimes they preferred to watch us silently rather than answer our questions. Perhaps they were scientists, perhaps they were tourists. The State Department instructed us to reveal as little as possible about humanity, in case that information could be used as a bargaining chip in subsequent negotiations. We obliged, though it didn't require much effort: the heptapods never asked questions about anything.

PART 4

The air conditioning in Weber's office almost compensated for having to talk to the man.

"They're willing to engage in a type of exchange," I explained, "but it's not trade. We simply give them something, and they give us something in return. Neither party tells the other what they're giving beforehand."

Colonel Weber's brow furrowed just slightly. "You mean they're willing to exchange gifts? Can we-" he searched for the right wording "-drop hints about the kind of gift we want?"

"They don't do that themselves for this type of transaction. I asked them if we could make a request, and they said we could, but it won't make them tell us what they're giving."

"If we give our gift first, will the value of our gift influence the value of theirs?"

"No," I said. "As far as we can tell, the value of the exchanged items is irrelevant."

"If only my relatives felt that way," murmured Gary wryly.

I watched Colonel Weber turn to Gary. "Have you discovered anything new in the physics discussions?" he asked, right on cue.

"If you mean, any information new to mankind, no," said Gary. "The heptapods haven't varied from the routine. If we demonstrate something to them, they'll show us their formulation of it, but they won't volunteer anything and they won't answer our questions about what they know."

Weber scowled. "All right then, we'll see how the State Department feels about this. Maybe we can arrange some kind of gift-giving ceremony."

I wrote out the semagrams for "process create-endpoint inclusive-we," meaning "let's start." Raspberry replied in the affirmative, and the slide shows began. The second display screen that the heptapods had provided began presenting a series of images, composed of semagrams and equations, while one of our video screens did the same.

This was the second "gift exchange" I had been present for, the eighth one overall, and I knew it would be the last. The looking glass tent was crowded with people. We would review the tapes of the images later to figure out just what the heptapods' "gift" was. Our own "gift" was a presentation on the Lascaux cave paintings.

In a previous exchange, the heptapods had given us information about ourselves that we had previously told them. This had infuriated the State Department, but we had no reason to think of it as an insult: it probably indicated that trade value really didn't play a role in these exchanges. It didn't exclude the possibility that the heptapods might yet offer us a space drive, or cold fusion, or some other wish-fulfilling miracle.

"That looks like inorganic chemistry," said the nuclear physicist, pointing at an equation before the image was replaced.

Gary nodded. "It could be materials technology," he said.

"Maybe we're finally getting somewhere," said Colonel Weber.

"I wanna see more animal pictures," I whispered, quietly so that only Gary could hear me, and pouted like a child. He smiled and poked me. Truthfully, I wished the heptapods had given another xenobiology lecture, as they had on two previous exchanges; judging from those, humans were more similar to the heptapods than any other species they'd ever encountered. Or another lecture on heptapod history. I didn't want the heptapods to give us new technology, because I didn't want to see what our governments might do with it.

I watched Raspberry while the information was being exchanged, looking for any anomalous behavior. It stood barely moving as usual; I saw no indications of what would happen shortly.

After a minute, the heptapod's screen went blank, and a minute after that, ours did too. Gary and most of the other scientists clustered around a tiny video screen that was replaying the heptapods' presentation.

Colonel Weber turned and said, pointing to me, "Schedule the time and location for the next exchange." Then he followed the others to the playback screen.

I sat down again at the transmitting computer.

I wrote out the semagrams for "locus exchange-transaction converse inclusive-we" with the projective aspect modulation.

Raspberry wrote its reply. That was my cue to frown. I wrote a request for clarification; Raspberry's reply was the same as before. Then I watched it glide out of the room.

Colonel Weber stepped forward. "What's going on? Where did it go?"

"It said that the heptapods are leaving now," I said. "Not just itself; all of them."
"Call it back here now. Ask it what it means."

"Urn, I don't think Raspberry's wearing a pager," I said.

The image of the room in the looking glass disappeared so abruptly that it took a moment for my eyes to register what I was seeing instead: it was the other side of the looking-glass tent. The looking glass had become completely transparent. The conversation around the playback screen fell silent.

"What the hell is going on here?" said Colonel Weber.

Gary walked up to the looking glass, and then around it to the other side. He touched the rear surface with one hand; I could see the pale ovals where his fingertips made contact with the looking glass. "I think," he said, "we just saw a demonstration of transmutation at a distance."

I heard the sounds of heavy footfalls on dry grass. A soldier came in through the tent door, short of breath from sprinting, holding an oversize walkie-talkie. "Colonel, message from-" Weber grabbed the walkie-talkie from him.

That final "gift exchange" was the last we ever saw of the heptapods. All at once, all over the world, their looking glasses became transparent and their ships left orbit. Subsequent analysis of the looking glasses revealed them to be nothing more than sheets of fused silica, completely inert. The information from the final exchange session described a new class of superconducting materials, but it later proved to duplicate the results of research just completed in Japan: nothing that humans didn't already know. We never did learn why the heptapods left, any more than we learned what brought them here, or why they acted the way they did. My own new awareness didn't provide that type of knowledge; the heptapods' behavior was presumably explicable from a sequential point of view, but we never found that explanation.

I would have liked to experience more of the heptapods' world-view, to feel the way they feel. Then, perhaps I could immerse myself fully in the necessity of events, as they must, instead of merely wading in its surf for the rest of my life. But that will never come to pass. I will continue to practice the heptapod languages, as will the other linguists on the looking glass teams, but none of us will ever progress any further than we did when the heptapods were here.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. artifact – a thing made by humans, esp. smth useful or interesting

Ancient tools and weapons are very important artifacts.

2. tabloid – a small newspaper with, many pictures and a little serious news

Dad was looking through a tabloid when I arrived.

3. request – a polite demand

Requests for visas will be dealt with within 48 hours.

4. spot – to pick out smb with an eye, to recognize

Suddenly I spotted a friend of mine in the crowd.

5. crew cut – a very short hairstyle for men

Why are you wearing a crew cut?

6. assess – to judge the quality or amount

He is so lazy, that it's difficult to assess his ability

7. browse – to look at smth without particular purpose

Customers are welcome to browse.

8. presume – to suppose

From the way they talked I presumed they were married.

9. indicate – to point at, to make clear, to show by hand

I asked him where my sister was and he indicated the shop opposite.

10. interpret – to translate; to understand or to explain the meaning of smth

I interpret his answer as a refusal.

11. assume – to suppose, to take without proof

If he's not here in 5 minutes, we'll assume he isn't coming.

12. budge – to (cause) to move a little

I can't budge the rock. I won't budge from my opinion.

13. property – natural quality or feature of smth; things; ownership

Many plants have medicinal properties.

14. substantial – large enough; large in amount or degree

The study reveals very substantial differences between population groups.

15. noncommittal – not expressing a clear opinion or intention

I asked him if he approves of our plans, but he was noncommittal.

16. accustom – to make used to smth

He had to accustom himself to the cold water.

17. establish – to set up, to organize, to arrange; to start

The company was established in 1860.

18. distinguish – to recognize the difference; to be able to hear (see) smth clearly

I could not distinguish her face in the darkness.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. quality, feature, value, ownership _____
2. asking, invitation, appeal, plea, enquiry, claim _____
3. thing, article, object, belonging, work _____
4. important, significant, large, solid, sufficient _____
5. consider, judge, calculate, evaluate, estimate, grade _____
6. express, show, point, mark _____
7. differentiate, recognize, make out _____
8. translate, understand, explain _____
9. create, start, organize, found _____
10. believe, suppose, think, presume _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. I speak Spanish. Would you like me to _____ for you?
A. establish B. budge C. interpret D. browse
2. It's very difficult to _____ satire from other types of comedy.
A. discover B. distinguish C. understand D. explain
3. There has been a _____ increase in inflation.
A. substantial B. noncommittal C. odd D. vague
4. The water is said to have healing _____.
A. recordings B. interests C. tastes D. properties
5. I think we can safely _____ that he is out of town.
A. move B. accuse C. notice D. assume
6. Test results will _____ whether the treatment was successful.
A. indicate B. recognize C. budge D. attract
7. We tried to _____ his suitability for the job.
A. agree B. assess C. assume D. afford
8. The government agreed to _____ two committees to examine the proposals.
A. interpret B. examine C. establish D. suffer
9. Three banks have already refused his _____ for a loan.
A. protest B. request C. performance D. response
10. The museum contains a wide collection of prehistoric _____ made of bone.
A. buildings B. properties C. tabloids D. artifacts

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

indicate	property	establish	substantial	interpret
request	assess	artifact	assume	distinguish

1. Even three-year-olds are able to _____ between causes and effects.

2. He spent the entire evening at the piano playing _____.
3. Mandela was eager to _____ good relations with the business community.
4. His decision was based on nothing more _____ than his dislike of foreigners.
5. This move was _____ in two ways.
6. 'Here it is,' she said, _____ the house.
7. The _____ represented a huge silver bowl decorated with precious stones.
8. I have always _____ her to be American.
9. Our agent will _____ the value of your property.
10. The books are my personal _____ .

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. property	A. quality	B. person	C. ear	D. interest
2. artifact	A. head	B. beard	C. hand	D. article
3. request	A. belonging	B. plea	C. recording	D. opinion
4. substantial	A. official	B. different	C. interaction	D. sufficient
5. establish	A. happen	B. notice	C. start	D. recognize
6. assume	A. believe	B. study	C. begin	D. accuse
7. assess	A. learn	B. decide	C. evaluate	D. show
8. distinguish	A. make out	B. make up	C. turn out	D. turn up
9. interpret	A. expect	B. suppose	C. explain	D. respect
10. indicate	A. show	B. wait	C. put	D. visit

Part 2

1. **pitch** — to set up (a tent)

We stopped on the river bank, pitched two tents and made a fire.

2. **scorch** — to burn (usually by sun)

The sun-scorched grass was yellow and looked dead.

3. **device** — a machine or piece of equipment that does a particular thing

Secure your bike with this simple locking device.

4. **nickname** — to give an informal name

They nicknamed him Fats because of his weight.

5. attend – to be present, to go to some place

Everyone in the office was expected to attend the meeting.

6. presumably – probably, it may reasonably be supposed

Presumably the bad weather has delayed the flight.

7. cooties – real or imaginary lice (small insects living on dirty bodies)

Randy pulled back from me like I had cooties or something.

8. include – to have as a part; to contain as an addition to smth

The price includes postage charges.

9. assign – to be sent to do some job, to be appointed

I was assigned to watch how the apparatus worked.

10. navigate – to direct the course

Get in the car; I'll if you hold the map and navigate.

11. maze – a labyrinth

We were lost in the maze for several hours.

12. concrete – building material made by mixing sand, cement and water

They use ugly concrete tower blocks.

13. load – to put smth heavy on or in smth

Load the parcels into the car.

14. peer – to look very carefully or hard as if not able to see well

She was peering though the window.

15. review – to consider and judge; to go over again in mind; examine

The committee is reviewing its decisions.

16. intelligence – a group of people who gather secret information

The military intelligence collects information about the secret plans of an enemy's actions.

17. estimate – opinion about smth

Your estimates of her character are wrong, so you should get known her better.

18. flap – a wide flat part that covers the opening

I crept under the flap of the tent, so that I couldn't bother anyone.

19. resemble – to be (look) like, be similar to smb/smth

She resembles her sister in appearance, but not in character.

20. outline – to show the main ideas, facts

She outlined the main points of the talk.

21. tinted – colored rather than clear

A car with tinted windows overtook ours.

22. glance – to give a rapid look

She often glanced at her watch during our meeting as if she was in a hurry

23. anticipate – to expect

We anticipated that the enemy would cross the river and so we destroyed the bridge.

24. barrel – a round wooden container

Their customers drink a million barrels of beer a year.

25. suspend – to hang from above

When we came nearer we saw a rope that freely suspended from the tree.

26. intersection – going across each other

Put the letter 'A' at the intersection of the two lines.

27. adjacent – very close, next.

The two families lived in adjacent streets.

28. curl – to form a spiral, a circle

My hair curls naturally.

29. distinct – clearly seen, heard, noticeable

A distinct smell of burning leaves was coming through the open window.

30. support – to bear the weight of smth; hold; to approve of and help

Do you think these shelves can support so many books?.

31. ring – to make a circle

The police ringed the building.

32. sputtering – repeated soft explosive sounds

The engine made a few sputtering sounds and died.

33. crawl – to be completely covered by smth.

The ceiling was crawled with flies.

34. point – to hold out a finger in order to show smth

He pointed to the house and said: "That's where I live."

35. flutter – to vibrate

The engine started to flutter and we thought it might burst.

36. puckered – held tightly closed

She sat with her eyes wide open and her lips puckered.

37. sample – a small part of smth typical of the whole

A nurse took blood sample for test. Show me the samples of your product.

38. utterance – smth spoken, the act of speaking; statement

I couldn't even imagine what his strange utterance could mean.

39. previous – being earlier in time or order

He has had no previous experience of this kind of work.

40. reply – to answer

Have you replied to the letter?

41. confirm – to support, to give proof of smth

Please, confirm our agreement in writing.

42. compatibility – the state of agreement

Their marriage ended because of poor compatibility with each other.

43. pattern – a regularly repeated arrangement, the way in which smth happens

We examined patterns of behavior in young children.

44. discourse – a serious conversation or speech on a particular subject

We had to listen to his long and powerful discourse on art.

45. tentative – made or done only as a suggestion, not certain.

Our plans are only tentative.

46. gloss – a short explanation of what something means

Some of the very technical words will need a gloss.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. part, piece, specimen, example, pattern

2. preceding, foregoing, last, preliminary

3. neighboring, nearby, next, adjoining

4. noticeable, obvious, clear, evident, explicit

5. maintain, hold, keep, sustain, help, provide

6. support, acknowledge, corroborate, prove, accept

7. be present, go, visit, call on

8. contain, comprise, hold, engage, embrace

9. examine, look, study, survey

10. highlight, point out, mark, note

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Born in India, he _____ high school and medical school in Madras.
A. attended B. assumed C. assigned D. examined
2. The progress of each child must be regularly _____.
A. read B. written C. interpreted D. reviewed
3. As dawn broke, the outline of a building became _____ against the sky.
A. distinct B. huge C. various D. substantial
4. She was sitting up in bed, _____ by pillows.
A. mixed B. fixed C. supported D. suspended
5. Mark has two children from a _____ marriage.
A. transparent B. adjacent C. previous D. famous
6. The doctor may do a test to _____ that you are pregnant.
A. consider B. confide C. interpret D. confirm
7. In his speech, the Prime Minister will _____ his new proposals.
A. outline B. judge C. charge D. recognize
8. Only 20 per cent of British restaurants _____ British wine on their wine lists.
A. appear B. afford C. include D. insist
9. Researchers are taking _____ of the air close to the factory.
A. sample B. notes C. fiction D. device
10. The site of the new building is _____ to the park.
A. behind B. opposite C. across D. adjacent

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

previous	confirm	distinct	support	sample
adjacent	outline	attend	review	include

1. The document _____ our company's recycling policy.
2. He rents two _____ rooms in an apartment building not far from his office.
3. There was a _____ smell of burning coming from downstairs.
4. The _____ owners of the house had hired an expensive interior decorator.
5. We had to bring some _____ of our work to the interview.
6. The head teacher _____ that two pupils had been expelled.
7. Everyone came together to _____ him in his campaign for justice.
8. Durable goods _____ such items as cars, computers, and electrical appliances.
9. The evidence was _____, and the grand jury decided to discuss the case.
10. I've voiced my opinion at every meeting I've _____.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. attend	A. visit	B. study	C. buy	D. sell
2. include	A. invite	B. wait	C. complain	D. contain
3. review	A. look at	B. look through	C. look up	D. look after
4. confirm	A. differ	B. acknowledge	C. distant	D. assign
5. support	A. respect	B. expect	C. cost	D. hold
6. outline	A. highlight	B. happen	C. engage	D. contain
7. distinct	A. distant	B. difficult	C. obvious	D. capable
8. previous	A. last	B. next	C. following	D. future
9. adjacent	A. interesting	B. neighboring	C. erratic	D. insane
10. sample	A. test	B. statement	C. phantom	D. example

Part 3

1. **invasion** — the act of attack and spread on a territory

During the Nazi invasion many European countries were occupied by Hitler's army.

2. **burly** — strongly and heavily built

It was a burly building made of stone.

3. **brief** — to give last instructions (information) usually official

Before the meeting let me brief you on what to expect.

4. **approve** — to have a positive feeling; to agree officially

This year's budget package has been formally approved by parliament.

5. **setup** — device, equipment

Our engineers are planning to install this setup in no time at all.

6. **procedure** — process; the way of doing smth

Writing a cheque is quite a simple procedure.

7. **dubiously** — not sure about smth; doubtfully

Mass media interpreted the incident quite dubiously.

8. **proceed** — to continue to happen; to go in a particular direction

Passengers for flight 406 to New York should proceed to gate 32.

9. **consistent** — keeping the same principle

This statement is not consistent with what you said yesterday.

10. **intermediary** — smb coming between two other groups, persuading them to agree

I'd like you to be an intermediary in our dispute.

11. restrict – to keep within strict limits

Travel is a dream of mine, but a busy working life has restricted my opportunities.

12. flat – smooth and level low surface

Please, find something flat to write on.

13. mount – to rise, to raise, to fix smth firmly in a particular place or position

The soldiers mounted a flag over their encampment.

14. insert – to put smth into smth else or between smth

He inserted the key into the lock, and opened the door.

15. socket – a place with holes for connecting a piece of electrical equipment

He fit the electric cord into the socket.

16. doodle – lines, figures, drawn aimlessly

He was drawing doodles on the sheet of paper.

17. script – a system of written letters and symbols

Gothic script is unlike the Roman one.

18. pop – to move, to act quickly, to appear suddenly, unexpectedly

She picked a berry and popped it into her mouth.

19. dub – to nickname

They dubbed him Fatty because of his weight.

20. require – to need someone or something; to need, to demand

Working with these children requires a great deal of patience.

21. source – smb or smth that provides with what one needs; cause

Scientists and engineers will be able to find new energy sources.

22. bunch – a group of people, cut flowers, bananas etc. that are held together

He took a bunch of keys out of his pocket and threw it on the table.

23. intricate – very detailed in design; very complicated and difficult to understand

The tunnel has such an intricate system that it's very easy to get lost without a map.

24. arrange – to plan, to agree, to provide; to put smth in order

Here is the list of dates arranged chronologically.

25. reminiscent – reminding of smb/smth happened in the past

The taste of this fruit is reminiscent of strawberry.

26. elicit – to get to draw out smth, to find out, to extract

After much questioning he elicited eventually the truth.

27. respond – to react to smth; to answer, to reply

The government should listen to industry and respond to its needs.

28. steady – held firmly, gradually developing, not changing lasting long

The company hopes to see a steady increase in car sales this year.

29. observe – to notice smb doing smth or smth happening

I observed him putting the watch into his pocket.

30. reveal – to allow to be seen, to make known, to open, to discover

She refused to reveal the contents of the letter.

31. subsequent – happening or coming after something else

We made plans for a visit, but subsequent difficulties with the car prevented it.

32. negotiation – formal discussions leading to an agreement

The terms of the wage settlement are still under negotiation.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. mediary, middleman, negotiator, go-between, arbiter

2. spring, origin, outset, outflow

3. following, next, posterior, later

4. reduce, confine, limit, stint

5. want, need, demand, call for

6. continue, go on, move, pass, walk

7. put in, stick in, fill in, poke

8. organize, establish, fix, make, create

9. open, discover, uncover, disclose

10. agree, appreciate, appraise, acknowledge

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. In _____ interviews, Steele has contradicted his original story.

A. subsequent B. continuous C. instructive D. impressive

2. _____ the plug into the earphone socket.

A. record B. write C. distinguish D. insert

3. The cause of the accident is still unclear and _____ further investigation.

A. inserts B. replaces C. requires D. interprets

4. The best _____ of potassium are vegetables and fruit.

A. source B. scorch C. cursive D. device

5. You're leaving college! Do your parents _____?

A. cover B. order C. afford D. approve

6. The council is _____ with its plan to move the stadium.

- A. confirming B. proceeding C. presuming D. assuming
 7. My doctor recommended me to _____ myself to two meals a day.
 A. reveal B. replace C. revolve D. restrict
 8. I'm trying to _____ a meeting with their sales director.
 A. arrange B. assign C. include D. brief
 9. Is it possible to find an _____ who is able to bring them to agreement?
 A. interpreter B. assistant C. intermediary D. informant
 10. Cockpit recordings may _____ the cause of the crash.
 A. affect B. attend C. repeat D. reveal

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

arrange	reveal	restrict	approve	source
insert	proceed	require	subsequent	intermediary

- The curtains opened to _____ the darkened stage and the decorations
- This command _____ the deleted text into its new place.
- Reed was ready to celebrate the victory, but he was disqualified failing a ____ drugs test.
- We're flying out on the 18th of March - it's all _____.
- Doctors have _____ the number of visits to two per day.
- The new stamps were personally _____ by the Queen.
- A garden was the _____ of inspiration for the painting.
- The medical condition _____ urgent treatment.
- The main road _____ north for another two miles.
- She tried to act as if she was an _____ in negotiations.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. arrange | A. organize | B. interpret | C. include | D. involve |
| 2. reveal | A. review | B. appear | C. repeat | D. open |
| 3. restrict | A. rebuild | B. limit | C. describe | D. allow |
| 4. approve | A. afford | B. assume | C. attract | D. agree |
| 5. proceed | A. ask | B. see | C. go | D. watch |
| 6. insert | A. instruct | B. invite | C. note | D. poke |
| 7. require | A. reveal | B. review | C. need | D. respect |
| 8. source | A. bank | B. bunch | C. case | D. cause |
| 9. intermediary | A. middleman | B. informant | C. guest | D. host |
| 10. subsequent | A. past | B. fast | C. next | D. last |

Part 4

1. furrow – to move brows when you are concentrated or worried

Michael furrowed and two deep vertical lines appeared between his brows.

2. slightly – not very much, only a little

I feel slightly better today.

3. search – to try to find something or someone by looking carefully

After three days searching, I gave up.

4. transaction – the action or process of buying or selling something

She had been involved in several suspicious transactions.

5. value – the amount that smth is worth, importance/usefulness, interesting quality

The dollar dropped in value on the foreign exchange markets last week.

6. influence – to affect the way smb thinks /behaves or affect the way smth happens

What factors influenced your decision to take the job?

7. irrelevant – not important or not connected to what you are doing

The original date of the translation is irrelevant to its value as a historical source.

8. murmur – to say something in a very quiet voice

Emily murmured an apology as she left.

9. wryly – showing that you think smth is funny and clever but not very pleasant

She smiled wryly as she listened to the tortured explanation.

10. cue – a signal to do smth at exactly the right moment

Greg's arrival seemed to be the cue for everyone to get up and start dancing.

11. vary – to be different in different situations; to change

The details may vary, but all of these savings plans have the same basic goal.

12. scowl – to twist your face to show you are angry; furrow

She scowled furiously at his back as he walked away.

13. affirmative – showing that you mean 'yes':

Her reply was affirmative.

14. equation – a statement in mathematics that two numbers are equal

Solve the equation $5x - 3 = 27$.

15. overall – considering smth as a whole, including everything

The overall winner will be announced in October.

16. infuriate – to make someone extremely angry

My refusal infuriated him extremely.

17. insult – an offensive remark; smth that seems to show a lack of respect

Such low wages are an insult to hard-working employees.

18. exclude – to deliberately not include smth; not to involve smb/smith into

These costs have been excluded from our calculations.

19. miracle – smth not normally possible and considered an act of God

The story of the weeping statue is being hailed as a miracle by some.

20. replace – (to cause)to take the place of smb/ smth that was there before

Email has largely replaced the traditional business letter.

21. pout – to show that you are angry or annoyed by pushing out your lips

Petra usually just pouts until she gets what she wants.

22. poke – to push quickly with your finger; to insert

Jane poked me in the arm to get my attention.

23. species – a plant or animal group whose members have similar general features

Over 120 species of birds have been recorded in this National Park.

24. encounter – to experience or deal with smth; to meet unexpectedly

We encountered one small problem during the trial run.

25. blank – empty and containing no writing or other marks

Write your name in the blank space at the top of the page.

26. schedule – to plan for something to happen at a particular time

They have scheduled the factory for completion in 2004.

27. locus – a place or situation where something exists or is produced

Washington D.C. is the locus of political power in the USA.

28. glide – to move in a smooth and easy way with no noise

The blade glided easily over his skin.

29. abruptly – suddenly and unexpectedly, often in an unpleasant way; sharply

Our friendship came to an end very abruptly.

30. rear – at the back of something

Keep your front and rear lights in good working order.

31. surface – the top layer or outside part of smth; a flat area

Road surfaces are slippery from the icy rain.

32. oversize – much larger than usual

She used to wear oversize clothes

33. grab – to take hold of smth in a rough or rude way

One of the men was grabbed and bundled into a car.

34. fused – joined to form one thing

The sperm fuses with the egg.

35. duplicate – to make an exact copy of smth

Digital images can be duplicated in seconds.

36. awareness – knowledge or understanding of smth; the ability to notice things

There was a general lack of awareness about safety issues.

37. explicable – easy to explain and understand

For some inexplicable reason, she chose that moment to break the news.

38. sequential – forming a set with a particular order; happening in a particular order

All the numbers were arranged in a sequential order, quite inexplicable.

39. immerse – to put deep under water; to spend time thinking about smth

David was deeply immersed in student politics.

40. wade – to walk in or through water or other liquid that is not very deep

She waded across the stream to get the ball.

41. surf – traveling to various places one after another on the Internet

She spends hours every day just looking through the surf in the Net.

MEDICAL TERMS

1. larynx – part of a throat in which sounds are produced

A dog's larynx is not as developed as ours, that is why it can't speak

2. vocal tract – a set of organs producing sounds

The vocal tract of animals is unable to produce human speech.

3. joints – a part of your body that can bend because two bones meet there (e.g. knee joint)

Old people often complain for pain in their joints especially in bad weather.

4. vertebral – spinal, forming a row of bones down the center of the back

Keep your vertebral column straight.

5. orifice – one of the holes or openings in your body, such as your mouth, nose, etc.

I saw his transparent eyes and a small orifice instead of mouth.

6. limb – a leg, an arm of a living being

A snake has no limbs, however, it moves very quickly.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. understanding, knowing, consciousness, realization _____
2. usefulness, expense, cost, worth _____
3. empty, clean, pure, white _____
4. change, displace, move _____
5. meet, come across, collide _____
6. impact, affect, change _____
7. plunge, submerge, dive, absorb _____
8. differ, fluctuate, range, modify, change _____
9. expel, prevent, discharge _____
10. plan, lay out, arrange, organize _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. He was the most critical person I had ever _____.
A. evaluated B. encouraged C. encountered D. confronted
2. Let's _____ another meeting in July.
A. show B. schedule C. change D. shine
3. The campaign aims to raise _____ of the dangers of passive smoking.
A. complaint B. coincidence C. ability D. awareness
4. Cover it with plastic to _____ light.
A. exclude B. cover C. threaten D. imply
5. Rooms _____ in size but all have television and telephone.
A. run B. dare C. vary D. request
6. Research has shown that the weather can _____ people's behavior.
A. influence B. introduce C. seduce D. pretend
7. Residential property in the city has doubled in _____ in the last three years.
A. sense B. value C. interest D. beauty
8. He seemed to be staring at a _____ television screen.
A. wide B. obese C. broad D. blank
9. We'll have to _____ all the furniture that was damaged in the flood.
A. replace B. recover C. remember D. recognize
10. Sandra _____ herself in work to try and forget her problems at home.
A. improved B. included C. immersed D. expected

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

vary	value	exclude	awareness	immerse
------	-------	---------	-----------	---------

blank	schedule	encounter	replace	influence
--------------	-----------------	------------------	----------------	------------------

1. Thieves had taken a radio and a Walkman, but nothing of great_____.
2. The last three boxes should be left_____.
3. The exhibition is _____ to run from January until March.
4. The rebels _____ no opposition on their march into the city.
5. The committee has to decide to _____ him from the competition.
6. The plan is to _____ state funding donations with private.
7. His films were greatly _____ by Hitchcock.
8. People's reactions to the drug can _____ widely.
9. Increased environmental _____ has led to a greater demand for recycled paper.
10. Do not _____ the device in the boiling water.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. awareness | A. understanding | B. explaining | C. pleasure | D. leisure |
| 2. value | A. fragrance | B. taste | C. cost | D. weight |
| 3. blank | A. shabby | B. empty | C. bald | D. bright |
| 4. encounter | A. help | B. ask | C. answer | D. meet |
| 5. exclude | A. explain | B. export | C. expel | D. exchange |
| 6. influence | A. accuse | B. assume | C. attend | D. affect |
| 7. immerse | A. plunge | B. mount | C. alter | D. vary |
| 8. replace | A. repeat | B. change | C. charge | D. report |
| 9. schedule | A. shine | B. shiver | C. poke | D. plan |
| 10. vary | A. offer | B. refer | C. differ | D. prefer |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1-2

1. **browse through** – to look at smth without looking for anything in particular

Browse through the local newspapers in order to find that advertisement.

2. do with – to be connected with someone or smth

Most of the articles have to do with America's role in the world since the end of the Cold War.

3. make of – to understand someone or the meaning of smth in a particular way

I don't know what to make of our new teacher.

4. give away – to tell information or facts that you should keep secret; betray

If captured, they might give away vital military secrets.

5. look for – to hope to get smth that you want or need; to search for smb or smth

He was looking for work as a builder.

6. pick up – to learn a new skill or start a habit without intending to

She picked up a few German phrases while staying in Berlin.

7. get back to smb – to talk to/telephone smb later to answer a question or give information

Can you get back to me on those figures by the end of the day?

8. step up – to move forwards to a place where an official event is happening

She stepped up to receive her prize.

9. curl up – to form a curved or round shape, or give smth this shape

We sat curled up on the sofa, watching the late film.

10. play back – to play a recording in order to listen to or watch it

Play back the phone message.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. browse through | a. to make known a secret |
| 2. curl up | b. to seek |
| 3. get back to | c. to look through |
| 4. give away | d. to learn |
| 5. do with | e. to connect |
| 6. look for | f. to enter |
| 7. make of | g. to understand |
| 8. pick up | h. to roll oneself |
| 9. play back | i. to replay |
| 10. step up | j. to be connected |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. Was the dispute connected with safety regulations?
2. What do you understand about this news?
3. We are seeking a partner in a new business venture.
4. Anna lay rolling herself in bed, thinking about what happened.
5. He was sitting in front of his computer looking through the Web-sites.
6. My daughter has learned a number of new habits
7. Will you, please, replay this very place, I'd like to listen to it again.
8. Move forward, quick! I'll hold the door open for you.
9. The interviewer promised to connect with me as soon as he could.
10. In wartime many people accused of betraying their country were executed.
11. He listened to his answering machine messages.
12. I'll find out the prices and call to inform you.
13. Mary watched the other dancers to see if she could learn any tips.
14. I don't want to tell anyone the secret how the system works.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. She had _____ all her beliefs and told a lie.
2. I _____ , and found myself standing on the stage.
3. The police will find the way how to _____ you on that account.
4. He visited the Philippines in order to _____ something from the local healers.
5. She could hardly _____ what they were discussing.
6. Let me _____ the price lists, so that I could choose what I would take.
7. A developing firm is _____ an ambitious university graduate.
8. Will you _____ the video, I'd like to look at the place again.
9. I feel happy when I _____ with a book in my cozy armchair.
10. Do you know if that Darwin has something to _____ the famous naturalist?
11. Press the red button on your VCR to start_____.
12. I _____ a few words of Greek when I was there last year.
13. I was so cold that just wanted to _____and go to sleep.
14. Their conversation had been largely to _____ work.

Part 3-4

1. show in(to) – to accompany; to lead smb into a room

When she arrives, show her straight in.

2. pick out – to choose one thing or person from a group; to select

Have you picked out a dress for the party?

3. bring in – to introduce smth new; to involve smb into smth

She said the government would bring in the necessary legislation to deal with the problem.

4. set up – to make a piece of equipment ready for use; to install

Will you be able to set up my PC?

5. tell apart – to recognize the difference between two very similar people or things

The two women are so similar that only their husbands can tell them apart.

6. get at – to mean; to try to suggest something without saying it directly

What are you getting at?

7. figure out – to be able to understand smth or solve a problem

We had to figure out the connection between the two events.

8. step forward – to offer help to smb who needs it

Ron stepped forward and offered to change the tire.

9. call smb back – to telephone who telephoned you earlier or to call again

I'll call you back when I've heard something.

10. wade in – to get involved in smth that may not be welcome; to interfere

She just waded in and gave the kid a smack.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. bring in | a. to mean |
| 2. call smb back | b. to understand |
| 3. get at | c. to telephone |
| 4. figure out | d. to introduce |
| 5. set up | e. to select |
| 6. show into | f. to see the difference |
| 7. step forward | g. to install |
| 8. pick out | h. to interfere |
| 9. tell apart | i. to offer help |
| 10. wade in | j. to accompany |

2. Replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs.

1. The butler accompanied him into a luxurious parlor.
2. I'll telephone later to make sure you are right.

3. The change of management is an opportunity to introduce a new talent.
4. The kids are installing the volleyball net.
5. We must understand how to do it.
6. You can select one of four colors.
7. Everything depends on what you mean by saying 'free'.
8. I don't want to interfere, but maybe you'd better listen to me.
9. They were twins, and only their mother could see the difference between them.
10. I do think you should have offered to help and given them a lift.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. No kidding! I really _____ leaving that meeting with a new contract.
2. I couldn't _____ what the teacher was talking about.
3. Do you know which conference room the guests should be _____ ?
4. I don't think your mother has the right to _____ our affairs
5. Graf can be _____ among other tennis players due to her natural athleticism.
6. Can you ask Mr. Brown to _____ as soon as he is free?
7. It's not easy to _____ a responsible employee among hundreds of candidates.
8. What about _____ a video camera outside the shop?
9. Why didn't you _____ and sooth me when I was in trouble?
10. And here I'd like to _____ James Walker to hear his comments.

C. I d i o m s

Part 1-2

1. **next to (nothing)** – almost but not completely; practically

After the company closed, investors were left with next to nothing.

2. make a couple – to match each other

They make a perfect couple, don't they?

3. shake one's head – to show disagreement by turning your head from side to side

My boss shook his head and I knew not to ask again.

4. bits and pieces – smb's possessions; small individual things

Then there are all the other bits and pieces involved in a wedding: invitations, photos, and car hire.

5. make smth difficult (easy) – to cause smb/smth to change to another state

Her age made it difficult to get another job.

6. take a breath – to stop breathing suddenly because being surprised or impressed

The beautiful scenery took my breath.

7. be fair – used for making your criticism of smb or smth seem less strong

I have never liked their music, although, to be fair, millions of people disagree with me.

8. get far – used for saying or asking how much progress smb or smth makes

How far have you got with the planning?

9. make progress – to cause the process of developing or improving happen

I'm worried that my son is making little progress in English.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

be fair	get far	next to
take a breath	shake one's head	bits and pieces

1. You can have the whole set for _____ no cost.
2. She just smiled and _____ as they sat and discussed football.
3. We have a few _____ of furniture, but that's all.
4. I had to stop about halfway up the hill and _____.
5. We're not going _____ if we don't trust each other.
6. _____, people are not happy about this tax rise.

Part 3-4

1. take one's point – understand the reason

I'm sorry – I just can't take the point of doing this.

2. point of view – a way of judging a situation based on a personal opinion

Looking at it from a scientific point of view, the discovery is extremely important.

3. make one's skin crawled – to give an unpleasant and slightly frightened feeling

The thought of him makes my skin crawl.

4. in earnest – more seriously or with more energy and determination than before

She was crying in earnest now.

5. hit a road block – to reach a point where it is impossible to continue smth

We hit a road block when we tried to print the document.

6. short of breath – finding it difficult to breathe

I was short of breath after climbing the stairs to her flat.

7. bargaining chip – smth that can be used to get what you want

We can use this argument as a bargaining chip while negotiating the contract.

8. on cue – at exactly the right moment, or exactly when you expect

Just as we're leaving, right on cue, the kids say they need the toilet.

9. drop a hint – to say smth in an indirect way

Sam keeps dropping hints about what he wants for his birthday.

10. go blank – writings and images disappear from the screen

Suddenly my computer screen went blank.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

take my point	bargaining chip	go blank
drop a hint	hit a road block	in earnest
on cue	point of view	short of breath

1. After the rainy season, building work can begin _____.

2. From the _____ of safety, the proposed measures are a significant improvement.

3. Diana was looking at me dubiously, she didn't seem to _____.

4. If your mind _____ it means that you are unable to understand what is said.

5. Just as we're leaving, right _____, the kids say they need the toilet.

6. Can I use this artifact as a _____ in order to get what we need?

7. Ferguson _____ that he would soon be retiring.

8. She was _____ because of the excitement of qualifying for a major championship.

9. I _____ every time I try to find the way out.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. His smile _____ her skin crawl.

2. Keep me informed of the progress you've _____ on the project.

3. My car is _____ strange clicking sounds.

4. I'm quite sure Nancy's resignation has nothing to _____ with her health.

5. I'd _____ the same if I had the chance.
6. He _____ a request for a loan, but the bank refused.
7. Roy has always claimed that he had nothing to _____ with her disappearance.
8. We all thought computers would _____ our jobs easier.
9. I don't think John and Paula will _____ a perfect couple. They are so different.
10. The noise in the school _____ learning difficult.
11. The party called to _____ further progress towards democracy.

D. W O R D S T U D Y

LEARN ▪ STUDY ▪ TRAIN ▪ TEACH

1. learn – to gain knowledge or skill

It's hard work looking after three children all day.

2. study – to learn by reading books or attending classes for a certain period of time

Less than 10% of girls choose to study science at school.

3. train – to learn the skills necessary to do a particular job

He had trained as a pilot in Texas.

4. teach – to give smb information about a subject

She teaches advanced students English.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. Who _____ you to drive?
2. How long have you been _____ German?
3. All employees will be _____ to use the new computer system.
4. I can't _____ with that music playing all the time.
5. Parents must _____ their children not to tell lies.
6. She spent several years _____ the wildlife in South Asia.
7. With this book, you can _____ all about the history of Africa.
8. You can't _____ old dog new tricks.
9. Her husband _____ to be an auto mechanic, but he can't find a job.
10. I doubt if we will ever _____ the truth.
11. Dad thinks I should _____ to be a doctor, but I'm not interested in medicine.
12. History is a difficult subject. There are so many dates to _____ .

13. That'll _____ you to lend her money.
14. What's the best way to _____ a language?
15. I've been _____ English for 6 years.

ABILITY ▪ CAPABILITY ▪ CAPACITY ▪ SKILL ▪ POWER ▪ APTITUDE

1. ability – the quality of being able to do smth well

Maria will be a fine musician; she shows a lot of ability.

2. capability – the ability of a person/machine to do smth difficult

Only two countries – Russia and America – have the capability to send humans into space.

3. capacity – the ability to do smth special that most people cannot do.

He has an enormous capacity for hard work.

4. skill – the ability to do smth well because you have learned and practiced it

This course is designed to develop the student's reading and writing skills.

5. power – natural ability to do smth, especially to see, hear, speak etc.

She was so surprised that for a few seconds she lost the power of speech.

6. aptitude – the natural ability or skill at doing smth

At an early age Susan showed an aptitude to languages.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. No one doubts his _____ to get work done quickly.
2. A trainee with normal _____ can learn these techniques in a few months.
3. Being a good manager requires a number of highly specialized _____.
4. This computer system gives the user the _____ of accessing huge amounts of data.
5. Like all great leaders, she showed the _____ to take bold imaginative decisions.
6. Patients with AIDS do not have the _____ to fight against common infections.
7. Billy possessed a seemingly infinite _____ for self-deception.
8. All applicants are given _____ tests before being invited for interview
9. Man Ray explored the _____ of the camera to their fullest extent.
10. The ostrich is a bird that no longer has the _____ of flight.
11. Being a teacher requires many different _____.
12. My teacher told me I had a natural _____ at tennis.

▪ G E T ▪

1. **get across** – to cause to be understood
The lecturer is very clever, but he is not very good at getting his ideas across.
2. **get at** – to mean; to try to suggest smth without saying it directly
What are you getting at by saying it?
3. **get away with** – to do smth bad and escape punishment
How did he get away with cheating?
4. **get back** – to return; to begin doing smth again
I'd like to get my money back.
5. **get back** – to phone, write, or speak to smb at a later time
I can't answer your question now, but I'll definitely get back to you tomorrow.
5. **get by** – to be good enough; to have enough of smth
Your work will get by, but try to improve it.
6. **get down to smth** to begin to give serious attention with a lot of effort
Let's get down to business.
7. **get off** – to leave a public vehicle
Are you getting off?
8. **get on** – to continue doing smth more quickly than before
Can we please get on, because there are a lot of things still to discuss?
9. **get through (to)** – to reach the end of smth unpleasant
How did you get through your examinations?
10. **get through** – to reach smb by telephone
I was trying to get through to him during the whole morning.
10. **get over** – to return to one's usual state of health, mood; to recover
I wish you to get over all your troubles.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. I need to get _____ and cook this chicken before everyone gets here.
2. It can take weeks to get _____ an illness like that.
3. I finally got _____ Warren on his mobile phone.
4. What message are you trying to get _____ to the consumer?
5. Can you get _____ me on those figures by the end of the day?
6. You could probably get _____ with that computer, but a more powerful one would be better.
7. After lunch we got _____ discussing the issue of redundancies.
8. They have repeatedly broken the law and got _____ it.
9. My arithmetic isn't very good, but I get _____.
10. I woke early and couldn't get _____ to sleep.
11. How did he ever get _____ his driving test?

12 What are you getting _____?

E. R E V I S I O N

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. A pair of wooden beams was the only thing _____ the roof.

A. approving B. proceeding C. supporting D. assessing

2. He _____ the boss's office with a nod.

A. indicated B. interpreted C. inserted D. immersed

3. His work firmly _____ the links between unemployment and poverty.

A. encountered B. established C. entertained D. exchanged

4. Car taxes will now _____ according to the amount of carbon dioxide.

A. assume B. carry C. attend D. vary

5. The bank can _____ travel insurance for you.

A. arrange B. assess C. assign D. approve

6. Suddenly Jon's relaxed mood was _____ by a feeling of panic.

A. arranged B. required C. replaced D. assessed

7. Neither side _____ what was discussed in the meeting.

A. restricted B. revealed C. replaced D. resembled

8. We were really frightened when _____ a black bear.

A. outlined B. established C. encountered D. mounted

9. No previous knowledge of Arabic is _____ for admission.

A. requested B. reviewed C. restricted D. required

10. These negotiations had been _____ since the late 1960s.

A. inserting B. proceeding C. influencing D. including

11. I _____ myself to smoking 2 cigarettes a day, no more.

A. required B. requested C. restricted D. reviewed

12. A strong blade had been _____ between the door and its frame.

A. inserted B. interpreted C. included D. indicated

13. When she saw the letter her worst fears were _____ .

A. arranged B. assigned C. briefed D. confirmed

14. The minister _____ the building plans.

A. varied B. attended C. approved D. proceeded

15. Their apathy can be _____ as a sign of satisfaction with everything.

A. interpreted B. encountered C. included D. excluded

16. The council met to _____ the budget.

A. reveal B. restrict C. replace D. review

17. We want to encourage people who left school early to _____ for better jobs.

A. teach B. train C. learn D. study

18. He learned to _____ a great variety of birds, animals, plants.
 A. distinguish B. schedule C. require D. approve
19. They _____ the damage at \$ 2,500.
 A. revealed B. restricted C. assessed D. approved
20. The sale is _____ for tomorrow.
 A. supported B. proceeded C. distinguished D. scheduled

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

distinguish	samples	blank	previous	arrange
interpret	source	influence	indicate	reveal
support	vary	awareness	distinct	replace
property	value	skill	substantial	ability

- It was prolonged illness that _____ her to become a doctor.
- We have been unable to trace the _____ of the infection.
- She lost all _____ of time and place.
- He was tired of staring at the four _____ walls.
- The _____ of the painting is not known.
- There is little to _____ it from the hundreds of other websites.
- Robots can take _____ of water, air and soil from other planets.
- This issue was discussed in the _____ chapter.
- It was _____ that he'd meet us at 9.00.
- How can we _____ our families on such low wages?
- Her tone _____ that she didn't believe a word of my explanation.
- Fees _____ with the size of the job.
- They were classified into two _____ groups.
- She carefully _____ the china plate on the shelf.
- The survey _____ that many consumers are aware of the risks involved.
- We'll need some help to _____ all this data.
- Can you offer me anything more _____ than this cheese sandwich?
- A patent is a form of intellectual _____.
- The children are divided into groups according to their reading _____.

20. The pilot showed great _____ and courage landing the plane.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. schedule	A. arrange	B. assume	C. assign	D. attend
2. previous	A. following	B. next	C. last	D. first
3. encounter	A. come in	B. come across	C. put in	D. give away
4. immerse	A. be aware	B. be busy	C. be away	D. be born
5. assess	A. replace	B. repair	C. evaluate	D. ignore
6. substantial	A. complete	B. possible	C. cultural	D. sufficient
7. subsequent	A. following	B. challenging	C. eventual	D. final
8. adjacent	A. past	B. next	C. distant	D. distinct
9. approve	A. confirm	B. reject	C. neglect	D. deny
10. distinct	A. lonely	B. close	C. fair	D. clear
11. proceed	A. go away	B. go down	C. go back	D. go on
12. require	A. must	B. can	C. need	D. may
13. reveal	A. get away	B. give away	C. keep away	D. be away
14. review	A. look at	B. look after	C. look for	D. look through
15. awareness	A. offering	B. understanding	C. preparation	D. negotiation
16. influence	A. attend	B. interview	C. introduce	D. affect
17. blank	A. busy	B. lazy	C. empty	D. full
18. request	A. ask	B. answer	C. reply	D. repeat
19. interpret	A. exclude	B. exchange	C. experience	D. explain
20. capacity	A. appearance	B. power	C. experiment	D. example

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to the boldfaces word.

1. proceed	A. continue	B. complete	C. appear	D. disappear
2. previous	A. distant	B. close	C. subsequent	D. last
3. attend	A. visit	B. skip	C. forgive	D. complain
4. exclude	A. examine	B. decrease	C. increase	D. include
5. reveal	A. hide	B. annoy	C. open	D. discover
6. substantial	A. enormous	B. considerable	C. scarce	D. desirable
7. distinct	A. precise	B. vague	C. clear	D. simple
8. confirm	A. support	B. approve	C. accept	D. reject
9. invasion	A. evacuation	B. introduction	C. invitation	D. invention
10. restrict	A. confine	B. compare	C. allow	D. assign
11. insert	A. return	B. remove	C. support	D. suggest
12. approve	A. accept	B. assume	C. refuse	D. repeat
13. immerse	A. mount	B. remind	C. influence	D. encounter
14. adjacent	A. brief	B. blank	C. distinct	D. distant

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Sam's hands _____ into fists.
2. I think we'll have to _____ an intermediary if we want to reach an agreement.
3. I am not going to _____ unimportant information for only your ambitious goals.
4. I finally _____ to Warren on his mobile phone.
5. Police were _____ clues as to the woman's identity.
6. She realized that one of her friends must have _____ her secret _____.
7. Let me see. I need to _____ how to complete it.
8. I'm curious how you can manage to _____ what we really need among that wide variety.
9. Don's pretty upset, but he'll _____ it.
10. He sometimes has trouble _____ his meaning _____ in English.
11. The refugees will need help to _____ the winter.
12. I'm sorry, I've got to go just now. _____ me _____ later today.
13. While the band is _____, would you check on the food?
14. I'm quite sure Nancy's resignation has nothing to _____ her health.
15. That's what I want to _____ my new life here.
16. What are you _____?

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. She _____ in great surprise.
2. Even if we practice all week, it will be _____ impossible to win.
3. My husband and I have different _____ on discipline
4. We want to know how _____ the committee has _____.
5. She _____ that she wanted him to leave her alone.
6. Just as we're leaving, right _____, the kids say they need the toilet.
7. I have another opinion, nevertheless, it's not at all difficult to _____.
8. When I said I wanted to help you, I was _____.
9. My boss _____ and I knew not to ask again.
10. When we reached the top of the staircase we were really _____.
11. Ownership of the land gives us a strong _____.
12. I don't see a way to solve the problem; we've _____.
13. My mind _____ – I couldn't think of a single answer.
14. I always have a lot of _____ in my coat pocket.
15. The mere sight of snakes makes my _____.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *un-*, *dis-*, *mis-*, - *non-*

_____ sufficient	_____ completely	_____ approve	_____ canny
_____ pronounceable	_____ illusioned	_____ appear	_____ connect
_____ possibly	_____ identifiable	_____ understand	_____ relevant
_____ directly	_____ written	_____ steady	_____ adjacent
_____ successful	_____ consistent	_____ different	_____ regular

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. Inorganic wastes are decomposed _____ by natural process.
2. It's easy to be _____ to money when you've never been poor.
3. Why do you always have to _____ of everything I do?
4. Why is the Minister so _____ in his approach to animal welfare?
5. The police had _____ evidence to arrest him.
6. We're focusing too much on _____ details.
7. Over 500 people are directly or _____ employed by the business.
8. The moon _____ behind the clouds.
9. They all died after an _____ illness.
10. The prisoners were kept in two _____ rooms.
11. We hope to attract customers who are _____ with their present health insurance.
12. He predicted the winners of each race with _____ accuracy.
13. He was _____ single-minded about his career.
14. I think he has _____ the nature of the problem.
15. Their ancestors have given it the name that seems _____.
16. She's still too weak and a bit _____ on her feet.
17. The president flew home after another _____ attempt to reach a peace agreement.
18. _____ all electrical appliances before attempting to clean them.
19. It was an _____ rule never to disturb Dad's work.
20. I work _____ hours, so it's hard to develop a routine.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. A formal request _____ a ballot has been granted.

2. He replied promptly _____ the affirmative.
3. I was sitting by the window _____ the time.
4. He seems to have a low opinion _____ women.
5. There's a big difference _____ the attitudes of town and country people.
6. _____ the other hand it would be sad to lose the family atmosphere.
7. According _____ Freud, our dreams represent our hidden desires.
8. I've talked to him on the telephone and _____ person.
9. They're very upset and don't want to talk _____ the moment.
10. The school is _____ the intersection of two main roads.
11. I left my purse _____ the top of the stairs.
12. A new icon will appear _____ your screen.
13. Looking at it _____ a scientific point of view, the discovery is extremely important.
14. The children stood _____ two rows against the wall.
15. What can we do _____ return for your kindness?
16. Altair, _____ a distance of 17 light-years, is one of the closest of the bright stars.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. I don't really approve _____ children wearing make-up.
2. Their future depends _____ how well they do in these exams.
3. I'd like to thank everybody _____ coming along today.
4. What makes him different _____ the rest of the students?
5. The film is based _____ a true story.
6. He had become accustomed _____ living without electricity, and missed it very little.
7. What are you waiting _____?
8. I borrowed a camera _____ Alex.
9. Detectives have been brought in to help search _____ clues.
10. She pointed _____ the ice cream that she wanted.
11. Their situation seems to have been very similar _____ ours.
12. This payment more than compensates _____ what we've lost.
13. He is currently engaged _____ a dispute with his former business partner.
14. Cultures may vary _____ one another.
15. I know that Sally feels quite strongly _____ this issue.
16. Muscle is composed _____ two different types of protein.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. I'm looking forward to _____ (see) you next Friday.
2. She promised _____ (be) in her office in the afternoon.
3. Try _____ (use) the keyboard instead of the mouse.
4. The Sonora Desert is worth _____ (visit), especially in spring.
5. She offered _____ (help) me with the tidying up.
6. There is still enough gas _____ (go) for about ten miles.
7. Keep _____ (take) these tablets.
8. I'll help you _____ (arrange) the party if you like.
9. We know how _____ (meet) all the requirements of our customers.
10. The bathroom needs _____ (clean).
11. I want you _____ (go) to bed immediately.
12. Your car looks like _____ (be) used.
13. It won't take us more than twenty minutes _____ (get) to the airport.
14. The desk is too heavy _____ (lift) without anybody's help.
15. The new agreement means _____ (accept) lower wages.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of say or tell.

1. I was so surprised that couldn't _____ a word in reply.
2. Could you _____ me your names, please?
3. He _____ us some funny stories about the local residents.
4. Does anyone have anything to _____?
5. She left without _____ goodbye.
6. I don't think you should _____ so.
7. Don't _____ a lie again.
8. How can you _____ one girl from another?
9. He seemed to be going to _____ something.
10. I'd like to _____ a few words.
11. Can you _____ us the way to the nearest gas station?
12. Don't _____ my fortune, I'd rather not know.

7. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. "I'm tired," he said.

2. He said, "She taught chemistry at one of the schools".

3. "I haven't had my breakfast yet", she said.

4. "I'll wait until you come back", she said.

5. He said, "Don't cry and put this thought out of your mind".

6. "How did she die?" I asked.

7. He asked, "Are you married?"

8. She asked, "Does your father work here?"

9. "Can you help me with my luggage?" he asked.

10. She said, "You must keep it a secret".

11. "When will you be waiting?" she asked.

12. "I didn't see him yesterday", she said.

13. "We've been working for the same company for 10 years", they said.

14. "When are we going to leave?" he asked .

15. She said, "I can drop you off at the station".

8. Turn the sentences into reported questions using the verbs in the box.

promise	agree	refuse	complain	order
demand	permit	forbid	apologize	remind

1. "No, I won't tell you the answer", he said.

2. She said, "I will give your message to Mr. Brown".

3. Mother said, "Don't forget to switch it off".

4. She said, "The service in your hotel is not good enough".

5. "I must be informed on your decision immediately!" he said.

6. The guide said, "You may enter the palace".

7. "Yes, I'll take these shoes", she said.

8. "Stop talking at once!" the teacher said .

9. She said, "You mustn't talk during the test".

10. "I'm sorry I 'm late", he said.

9. Turn these sentences into reported advice.

1. She said, "You should take this jacket."

2. He said, "Why don't you take a holiday?"

3. "If I were you I'd buy a car", he said.

4. "You ought to plant some trees here", he said.

5. She said, "You must read this book. It's marvelous."

6. "You'd better take off your wet shoes", she said.

7. She said, "It's time you left the party."

8. "You may as well ask your teacher", he said.

9. "I advise you to apply at once", he said.

10. She said, "You shouldn't go there on foot."

10. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. 'Shall I get you some coffee?'

2. 'I'd like you to come to my wedding.'

3. 'Could I have two tickets, please?'

4. 'Why don't you learn to play your guitar?'

5. 'I wonder if I could have tomorrow off?'

6. 'Let's take Wendy with us.'

7. 'If I were you I'd take a taxi.'

8. 'Close your eyes!'

9. 'What about renting a car?'

10. 'May I have a copy of the letter?'

11. 'You should grow your own vegetables.'

12. 'Why don't we meet and discuss everything?'

11. Join the ideas using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. I don't know much about the Chinese. I can advise you of their cultural habits. (*Also/ Although*)
2. He took much trouble over the figures. He wanted to show his new boss what a careful worker he was. (*in spite of/ in order to*)
3. He sent his sons to a boarding school. He wanted to have some peace (*as well/ so as*)
4. These shoes don't match my handbag. They feel comfortable (*nevertheless/whereas*).
5. Many people in Germany drink a lot of beer. The Russians also drink it a lot. (*So /Like*)
6. Very few people are concerned about the economy. The majority worries that a close relative may lose a job. (*whereas/furthermore*)
7. Ships carry lifeboats. The crew can escape if the ship sinks. (*as soon as/so that*)
8. We drove very fast. We missed the flight. (*however/therefore*)
9. I have given him a key. He can get into the house whenever he likes. (*even though/so that*)
10. We were going only to the Metropolitan Museum of Arts. We also visited other places of interest. (*Though/So*)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

1. Name the main characters and their occupations.
2. What event brought Louise Banks, Gary Donnelly and Colonel Weber together?
3. What were Louise Banks and Gary Donnelly assigned to do?
4. Who did they report to?
5. What were looking glasses used for?
6. What did the heptapods look like?
7. Was it easy to learn the heptapod language?
8. Did the humans learn anything new from the heptapods?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

1. Why did the aliens arrive?
2. Were the aliens interested in cooperation with the humans? Why?
3. Why was Colonel Weber so secretive?
4. What was his role in establishing contact with the aliens?
5. What did the State Department intend to get from the aliens?
6. Why did the aliens leave?
7. Do you think they will ever come again?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list each character qualities /habits. Then give examples of their behavior.

Character	Qualities/Habits	Behavior
1. Louise Banks	intelligent/hardworking/ independent/speaks what she thinks/optimist/open-minde d/sense of humor	
2. Gary Donnelly		He is always asked to give his opinion on something. He makes jokes about everything.
3. Colonel Weber	narrow-minded/secretive/ca utious	
4. Flapper and Raspberry		

2. Think of some examples of cause-and-effect relationship in this story. Then complete the following chart.

Cause	Effect
1.	1. Louise received a request for a meeting
2. Louise listened to the recording of the aliens' speech.	2.
3. The scientists were provided with the equipment.	3.
4.	4. The State Department allowed to arrange a gift-giving ceremony.
5.	5.This infuriated the State Department.
6. The heptapods left unexpectedly.	6.

3. Think of some examples of purpose-and-action relationship in this

story. Then complete the following chart.

Action	Purpose
1. Louise started to communicate with the aliens.	1. In order to ...
2.	2....so that they could make faster progress in communication
3....tried to demonstrate basic physical attributes.	3....

D. S H A R I N G I D E A S

1. Discuss the relationship between the humans and the heptapods. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
2. There is a saying ‘There are tricks in every trade’. How does it apply to the story you have read?
3. Give examples from the story, which show that the State Department wanted to get some benefit from the heptapods’ arrival.
4. Think about what might have happened to the human civilization if the heptapods had revealed their technologies to people.
5. Try to predict what each character of the story will be doing in a few years.

E. W R I T I N G

1. Imagine you are a reporter and you are called on the scene of the accident. Try to take interviews from Colonel Weber, Gary Donnelly, Louise Banks. Write an account for your newspaper.
2. Compare and contrast the relationship between the humans and the heptapods, their goals.
3. Create a conversation between the State Secretary and the Head of Military Intelligence just after the aliens’ arrival.
4. Pretend you are Colonel Weber. Write a report to the State Department describing the account of events.
5. Imagine you are Flapper, one of the heptapods. Write a report to your authorities about the space travel.
6. Suppose you were Louise Banks, how would you describe your plans and intentions for the nearest future?

REFERENCES:

1. **Evans Virginia, Dooley Jenny.** Successful Writing: Intermediate Level - 2d ed. – Swansea: Express Publishing. 2000. – 152 p.
2. **Evans Virginia, Dooley Jenny.** Successful Writing: Upper-Intermediate Level - 2d ed. – Swansea: Express Publishing. 1998. – 116 p.
3. **Evans Virginia, Dooley Jenny.** Successful Writing: Proficiency Level - 2d ed. – Swansea: Express Publishing. 1998. – 146 p.
4. **Gaines Barbara K.** Idiomatic American English – Japan: Kodansha International. 1998. – 115 p.
5. **Goodale Malcolm.** Idioms Workbook – London: Collins Cobuild. 1995. – 196 p.
6. **O. Henry.** Selected Stories. Wordsworth Editions Ltd. – 735 pages
7. **Seidi Jenaifel, McMordie W.** English Idioms. – Oxford University Press. 1988.
8. **Workman Graham.** Phrasal Verbs and Idioms: Upper-Intermediate – 2d ed. – Oxford: Oxford University Press. 1995. – 96 p.
9. **Workman Graham.** Phrasal Verbs and Idioms: Advanced – 2d ed. – Oxford: Oxford University Press. 1995. – 96 p.
10. **W. Somerset Maugham.** Selected Prose. M: Manager. 1999. – 288 p.
11. **Year's Best SF 4.** Ed. by David J. Hartwell – Harper Prism, A division of Harper Collins Publishers. 1999.
12. **Древо знаний (The Tree of Knowledge).** Айрис-Пресс, 2002.
13. **Избранная проза (Selected Prose).** Сборник на англ. языке.- Составитель Н.А. Самуэльян. – М. «Менеджер», 1999.
14. **Маккей А., Ботнер М.Т., Дж. И. Гейтс.** Словарь американских идиом. – Спб. , «Лань», 1997 г.
15. **О. Генри.** Избранные рассказы. Сборник на англ. языке.- Составитель Н.А. Самуэльян. – М. «Менеджер», 1998.
16. **Чивер Джон.** Избранная проза. Сборник на англ. языке.- Составитель Н.А. Самуэльян. – М. «Менеджер», 2000. – 304 с.
17. **Читаем и обсуждаем (Read and Discuss).** Сборник на англ. языке.- Составитель Н.А. Самуэльян. – М. «Менеджер», 1997.

- 18. Advanced American Dictionary.** Longman. 2001.
- 19. Concise Dictionary and Thesaurus.** Harper Collins Publisher, 2001.
- 20. Dictionary of Idioms.** Collins Cobuild, 1995.
- 21. Language Activator.** Longman Group UK Ltd., 1997.
- 22. NTC's Ameican Idioms Dictionary.** NTC Publishing Group, 2000.
- 23. Webster's Dictionary of American English.** Random House Inc., 1997.

CONTENT

INTRODUCTION.....	3
UNIT I MR.KNOW ALL.....	4
UNIT II A FRIEND IN NEED.....	38
UNIT III A RETRIEVED REFORMATION.....	69
UNIT IV THE OPEN WINDOW.....	108
UNIT V THE DREAM.....	139
UNIT VI THE CHIMERA.....	174
UNIT VII THE HEPTAPODS.....	219

REFERENCES	269
------------------	-----

Юлия Анатольевна Кравцова,

ст.преподаватель кафедры иностранных языков № 2 АмГУ;

Ольга Борисовна Карачева

ассистент кафедры иностранных языков № 2 АмГУ;

Ирина Николаевна Федорищева,

ст.преподаватель кафедры иностранных языков № 2 АмГУ;

Ларина Владимировна Фещенко,

ст.преподаватель кафедры иностранных языков № 2 АмГУ,

Татьяна Викторовна Шуйская,

доцент кафедры иностранных языков № 2 АмГ, к.ф.н..

StoryTalks. Учебное пособие по домашнему чтению

Изд-во АмГУ. Подписано к печати 10. 07. 06 Формат 60х84/16. Усл. печ. л. 14,65 , уч.-изд. 14,9 л.
Тираж 100. Заказ 57.